ANTIDVELLO:

OR,

A TREATISE,

In which is diſcuſſed the lawfulneſſe and vnlawfulneſſe of SINGLE COMBATS.

Together with the forme of ſeuerall DVELS performed in this Kingdome, vpon ſundry occaſions.

LONDON,
Printed by THOMAS HARPER, for *Beniamin Fiſher*, and are to be ſold at his ſhop in Alderſgate ſtreet, at the Signe of the Talbot,
M.DC.XXXII.

LONDON

A Diſcourſe wherein is diſcuſſed this queſtion, viz. Whether a Chriſtian Magiſtrate may grant a Duell, for deciding of the matter when the true author of ſome fact committed cannot euidently be diſcouered.

GENERALL principles & common notions, by which a man diſtinguiſheth iuſt and what is vniuſt, are of themſelues ſo perſpicuous, that it is in vaine for any man to beſtow paines in the proofe of the ſame; But, particularities, on which the eie of Iuſtice ought to reflect, are oft times accompanied with ſundry apparances, and

 are

Generall principles are not to be gainsaid, but particularities are subiect to argumentation.

are thereby rendred disputable: so, we say in a generall proposition, that *Murder is vnlawfull*, but yet in some particular case, it may from circumstances receiue such a qualification, that it may bee esteemed a lawfull action; Vniuersall maximes are like to Stars, their place certaine and their motions regular and within their generall extention, they comprehend inferior propositions. The Law eternall of God and of Nature, are two great lights which impart lustre and vigor to all the rest, but, when wee come to Hypotheses, then a man descends (as it were) to the elementary region, where all things are changeable and turbulent, and where one shall encounter and meet with a perpetuall conflict of reasons as with so many counterbuffs of contrary winds. One disputes concerning an exild man, a *Banditti*, to whom one promises pardon, in case he bring the head of one of his Comrads, hee brings the head of his owne father, that was one of the number, the question is, whether hee ought to haue the benefit

vpon

vpon the faith of the State aſſured and promiſed him, or be puniſht as a Paricid: If a man found aſleep be charged to haue committed a murder, there is required a very ſerious diſquiſition and waighing of circumſtance and reaſons before he be eyther condemned or acquitted.

Now, if the queſtion *of Right* (concerning what is iuſt and what is vniuſt) be entangled with ſo many perplexities, that of *Fact* (concerning what is true and what is falſe) is infinitely more obſcure and abſconded. It hath been ſeene, that two men haue ſo ſimmetrically reſembled each other, that all the kindred of the one, and his very wife alſo, being miſtaken, hath entertained the impoſtor into a place wherein hee had no intereſt, and yet when the true husband hath come and preſented himſelfe, the ſubtilties of the other were ſo quaint, and his anſwers ſo pat and comformable that they haue made the Iudges to ſtand aſtoniſht; The eies of all Europe were a long time intent vpon that pretended *Sebaſtian* of Portu-

gall, and they that were moſt cleare ſighted were deceiued in him: Oftentimes both *Fact* and *Right*, are liable to diſputation, as in the cauſe of diuorſe between *H.8.* and *Katherine of Arragon.*

If the queſtion bee then of a fact which cannot bee proued by any ordinary way, what ſhall the Iudges doe to find out the [illegible] haue not *Moſes* reſident on [illegible]arth, who could conſult with God himſelfe; when hee knew not to whom the right of a controuerted ſucceſſion belonged: Nor the Pectorall of iudgement vpon the habit of the great Sacrificer: Nor the water of malediction, which diſcouered the innocence or guilt of women ſuſpected of Adultery: Nor the eie of Seers or Prophets, how gaue anſwer themſelues concerning ſmaller matters, as *Saul* ſearching his fathers aſſes, went to *Samuel* to heare ſome tidings of them: Nor that Spirit, by which *Elizeus* diſcouered the auarice of *Gehazi*, and S. *Peter*, the lying of *Ananias* and *Saphira.*

Antient courſes to find out facts, which could not be proued by an ordinary way.

I will not ſpeake at all of thoſe vnlaw-

full

full wayes, which many haue late held to attaine thereunto, no man would bring againe into vſe, the prooſe by ſcalding water, wherein the *Liuonians* put the hand of the accuſed partie, or the iron red hot, vpon which one of the greateſt Princeſſe of Europe, offered to march naked, for teſtification of her chaſtity; or the profanation of thoſe who abuſe the Sacrament of the Euchariſt, to know if a man be innocent, and giue it him in this manner: *The body of our Sauiour Ieſus Chriſt inable thee to proue:* More tolerable was that courſe which a Iudge tooke to end a controuerſie betwixt three brethren, who were at variance which of them was the more legitimate, hee cauſed the body of their dead father to be vnburied, gaue them in their hands bowes and arrowes, and adiuged that hee of the three that ſhot neereſt his heart, ſhould bee held legitimate: Two ſhot, the third ſaid that hee had a great deale rather forgoe his title, then to gaine it at ſuch a price; The ſucceſſion was ad-

Vnlawfull waies vſed for that purpoſe.

iudged to the laſt, and if the proceeding were barbarous, the iudgement was commendable. But theſe impious courſes, which the Sunne of Iuſtice hath chaſed into Hell, ought now thence to bee cald back againe.

Let vs ſee then, if there reſt any other extraordinary way, which may hold the place of proofe: Wee find that in ſuch caſes, ſome haue vſed caſting Lots, and ſuch as approue of a Duell, doe eaſily allege this reaſon: That the Duell is one kind of Lot, and by conſequent practicable. Indeed thereby occaſions wherein the Lot may take place; If two brothers haue an inheritance to be diuided betwixt them, and after each portion being equaly diuided, yet they may try by Lot to ſee which of the two ought to fall to the one or other. In a Senat if a place fall void, and many Citizens expect it, being of equall capacity to execute the ſame, the claymes of theſe competitors may bee tryed by Lot, for auoidance of many miſchiefes: So did the Romans vſe to doe in allo-

Lotts.

allotting their Prouinces, and ſtill to this preſent, many Common wealths follow that courſe, in diſpoſing Offices and dignities.

In time of perſecution, the Miniſters of a Church may caſt the Lot, to know to whom amongſt them it ſhall fall to ſtay, or goe; the examples wherewith holy Antiquity doth furniſh vs, to this purpoſe haue ſome thing in them of a high ſtraine, then the ſimple nature of a Lot can well beare; as one may ſee in the diuiſion of the Land of Canaan, and in the inauguration of *Saul*, in whoſe election it pleaſed God they ſhould deale by Lot. But the matter which is properly in queſtion is this; If a man may this way ſerue his turne, to find out the truth of a fact which is vnknowne vnto vs; and heere again wee haue examples, but they are ſuch which exceed the nature of a Lot. In antient times amongſt Gods people, when it was euident that ſome crime was committed amongſt them, the author whereof was not certainly knowne one caſt

caſt Lots among the Tribes; from the Tribes, he came to the Families; and laſtly it fell vpon ſome one ſingle man; ſo was hee conuicted that had taken things forbidden at the ſacke of Iericoh; ſo *Ionathan* was found out, hauing done contrary to the command of the King his father: ſo the Mariners came to the knowledge that *Ionas* occaſioned the tempeſt; If we were aſſured to find out matters ſo happily, or if God had giuen vs his warrant, I could admit of caſting lots in this nature, but we haue nomore certainty to build vpon, but the incertainty of the Lot. And yet this makes nothing in fauour of a Duell; for the manner of proceeding by Lot, is not to ſend two men to ſlay one another, and generally the Lot toucheth but one, but the Duell endangereth both, one whereof is innocent.

Duell.

We will then now ſpeake of the Duel; and to the end, that no man may imagine that poſſeſt with a preiudicate opinion, we condemne it onely, in regard of the name

name which makes it odious, we wil accurately waigh all the kinds and differences; I well know that wee are not to treate heere of the fights wherein Gladiators & Fencers exerciſe themſelues, for recreation of ſpectators; Moreouer, we handle not that vnheard fury of thoſe, who to fulfill their particular reuenge, or for ſome imaginary puntitio of honour, haue waded ſo farre in the effuſion of blood; and ſent ſo many ſoules to Hell: But the queſtion heere is of a Duell warranted by the Lawes; agreed vnto by the Soueraigne, adiudged neceſſary in default of other proofe, for the making manifeſt of ſome fact in queſtion of conſequence to the State; and for the deciſion of a difference of great importance; but this is the very thing which we argue, to wit, if Superiors may in good conſcience decree a Duell at their motions, for the determination of their difference.

And that I may anticipate and obuiate many pretenſes, which might diuert vs from the ſtate of the queſtion: I acknow-

ledge, that vpon certaine occaſions the Duell is diſputable, and vpon others altogether neceſſary; See ſome examples:

When an innocent man oppreſt by the calumnious accuſation of his aduerſary, is like to be condemned, in caſe he iuſtifie not himſelfe by combat; ſome hold, it ſhall bee lawfull to accept this way; there being none other way left him to ſupport his innocence. But, this proceeding cannot iuſtifie the Iudges; for if they haue found him guilty, will the Duell make him innocent? and finding nought to conuict him, are they not bound to acquit him? Why then will they expoſe him to the hazard of his life, whom they are not able to pronounce guilty?

The Duell whereto a man is conſtraind by the violence of one that ſets vpon him, is not of this nature. He that is aſſayled, may repell force, with force; it is a principle in nature and a priuiledge granted by the Laws; for the partie aſſailed is not in caſe

caſe to inuoke the aſſiſtance of a Magiſtrate, and the Magiſtrate is not in place to repell that oppreſſion. But, what relation, or analogy hath this defence with the Magiſtrates abſence rendred neceſſary, and which hee ought to haue forborne, if hee had beene in place with a Duell, which the Magiſtrate will authoriſe either by his preſence, or by his approbation?

Nor makes it to the purpoſe to allege the Duels which haue beene fought betweene Princes, which haue determined their quarels by the monomachy of man to man. The Crowne of England was ſometimes in that ſort diſputed, betweene *Edmund Iron-ſide*, and *Canute* the Dane: *Edward* the third offred as much to the King of France; the French King to the Emperor *Charles* the fifth, and *Henry* the Great, Father of our moſt Illuſtrious Queene, made offer to the Duke of *Guiſe* his competitor, to put a period to their difference by point of ſpeare, his perſon againſt his, ſix againſt ſix, or hundred a-

gainſt hundred. I will not ſay, that it is lawfull to a Prince ſo to hazard the head of the Common-wealth, and in his perſon, all the body of his Eſtate; but when this way is permitted them, it is, becauſe Soueraigne Princes haue not any Iudge aboue them who can doe them right, ſo that to obtaine reaſon from their hands, who are eleuated to as high a pitch of dignity as themſelues; there is not any other way, but by armes; and theſe their doings haue an outward ſhew of charity: for a Prince will ſay, that hee likes better to expoſe his owne perſon to danger, then to ſee a bloody warre that ſhould ſwallow vp many thouſands of men, and giue occaſion of an infinite ſlaughter.

And it may bee that ſome people deſirous to auoid a generall conflict of nation againſt nation, haue ſometimes remitted their quarrell to a certaine number of men, to be choſen by either ſide by them to bee decided by combat. So three hundred Lacedemonians fought againſt a like number of the Argiens; three

Romans

Romans againſt three Latins; and when *Dauid* and *Iſhboſeth*, ſtood competitors for the Royalty; the two Generals *Ioab* and *Abner*, cauſed a combat betweene twelue Souldiers of the Tribe of *Iuda* againſt twelue of the Tribe of *Beniamin*. This kind of Duell is as it were an abridgement of the warre, and yet not very iuſtifiable.

There is more apparance in this caſe, then in any of the caſes afore mentioned. Two Armies are ready to fight, hee that hath the right on his ſide, finds himſelfe inferior in forces, ſo that if they come to handy-ſtroakes we muſt all die of neceſſity: The enemy makes an offer of a ſingle fight one to one, and offers to ſtand to the euent of this Duell; why ſhould wee all periſh, and not rather make legall of this way and expedient, which perchance may giue vs the victory, or at leaſt will ſaue ſix thouſand mens liues, and there can but one be ſlaine?

But this example hath no correſpondence with the Duell, whereof wee

now treat, and one may not draw into conſequence particular actions which are exployted in warre, or in the conſequence of warre; eſpecially in heat of batalle, as *H.* 7. ſlew *Richard*, that enioyed the Royall throne: and *Adolphe de Naſſau*, died by the hand of *Albert* of Auſtria.

Moreouer, it matters not to allege that famous example of *Dauid* againſt *Goliah*, of a young infant not hauing for defenſiue Armes other then his Shepheards ſtaffe, and for offenſiue but a ſling and a ſtone, againſt an old warrier, monſtrous in ſtature; armed at all points, his ſpeare and lance of a prodigious bigneſſe, like the reſt; had not *Dauid* had in this particular an aſſurance of Gods pleaſure, it had beene an extreme raſheneſſe to enterpriſe it, and to hope to ouerthrow ſo great a Coloſſus. Alſo that action is numbred amongſt the miracles, but miracles are not wrought to ſerue as rules for our imitation, and we muſt conſider the quality of theſe two Champions, and the occaſion

of

of the Duell: The one was an Iſraelite, the other a Philiſtin; they engaged themſelues in the quarell of two nations, and not for their particular intereſt; they were ſubiects to two ſeuerall Princes, and of a contrary Religion, it was in the view of two Armies, and that of the Infidels was to yeeld themſelues conquered, if the Giant were ſlaine: In a word, beſide that, it was ſupernaturall, it was an action of Warre, and conſequently lawfull.

Now, to come to the ſcope of my intent, we muſt remember that all manner of difference, conſiſts either in *Fact*, or in *Right*. As concerning the queſtion of Right: I no more like that it ſhould be decided by the ſword; otherwhiles this beſtiall cuſtome hath paſt as a Law, that the better title of Competitors conſiſteth in force, ſo that brothers entered not oft into their Fathers inheritance; but by way of parricide, vpon the dead carkaſſes of their neereſt kindred, & with violence to ſome of their own blood: Sons themſelues haue beene

beene vnnaturall to their owne Fathers, and conſtrained them to ſeeke ſuccour by Armes. But, let vs ſee if a Duell may haue place in the queſtion of Fact.

To proue the affirmatiue, theſe reaſons following are alledged; That the warre is without compariſon more vniuerſally bloody and pernicious, then is the combat of a few particular men, the death of one or two hath no proportion with the butchering and maſſacre of many thouſand perſons; the ſlaughter of infants and old folke, the deſolation of widowes and orphans, the ſpoile of tillage, demoliſhing of houſes, ruine of villages, pillages and violence, which cõuert into a wilderneſſe the moſt floriſhing Kingdomes; and in a word all the miſchiefes which warre engendreth, and yet is by naturall Right, That a Duell for proofe of actions obſcure and doubtfull, hath beene adiudged neceſſary by antiquity, which hath made the Laws, and approued by the ſuffrages of a great many nations, that the Chriſtian world hath happily put it in practiſe, for no

in this Portraicture the wonted Guize
of Warlicke English in forepassed Tymes
When matters were not put to Comprimize
But by the Sword to iudge of doubtfull crimes

Valour decided the cause, and Hee
Gain'd Honour which obtain'd the Victorie,
Se Conquered if Hee were not slaine in fielde,
Was doom'd by course of Lawe his life to yeeld.

no ſhort ſpace of time: That many differences cannot bee otherwiſe determined nor many ſecret iniuries come to light, but by this expedient.

I acknowledge that warre is one of the ſcourges of mankind, and may bee of all others the moſt horrible: And thoſe which haue authority to make warre, are bound to ſeeke out all waies for agreement before they enterpriſe warre, to imploy the mediation of their allyes, and to bring downe their demands to an indifferent equallity. But, when one is forced to enter into war all lamentable euents, which accompany war are to be imputed to that party that hath compelled the other to ſuch a neceſſity; eſpecially, if the warre is defenſiue, for he that fights onely to defend himſelfe, is not guilty of the miſeries which may follow. For offenſiue warre, oftentimes it is not neceſſary: a Prince or Eſtate, from whom a duty is detained haue right to regaine by this way. In the firſt warre that was in the world the Patriarche *Abraham* armed all his houſe, to

ſet at liberty his friends and kindred: Warre then is made warrantable by the law of neceſſity; now this neceſſity proceeds (as we haue before ſpecified) heerehence, becauſe Soueraigne powers are exempt from iuſtifying their actions before any Tribunall.

There is not a Iudge eſtabliſhed amongſt Kings to decide their differences, ſo that he which is offended by the other, can haue no recourſe but to the iuſtice of armes. But it is not ſo amongſt priuate men, for God hath giuen them Iudges, and it not permitted ſuch Iudges, who are no other extirpers of Battell, to grant the ſame to two parties at variance, to the end that they may do Iuſtice by their ownhands.

We muſt marke alſo that warre is not made to know which of the parties hath the right; for he that enterpriſeth a war, ought firſt to be well aſſured of the iuſtice of his cauſe; for otherwiſe it is not a war, but a publique robbery, but in the Duell, two men are made to fight, who it may bee

bee kill one the other, without which one knowes not which had the wrong.

To conclude, war is authoriſed in Scripture by expreſſe ordinances, furniſhed with many rules, bleſſed by *Moſes* prayers, practiſed by Prophets and Kings; approued by the Fore-runner of Chriſt; honoured by the preſence of the Arke; and gouerned by a Chiefetaine, that cals himſelfe the God of Battailes. But after a Duell we finde not ſo much as the bare name mentioned.

Concerning the Lawes, vpon which ſome found this Duell; we ought firſt to know, if ſuch Lawes themſelues be lawfull. *A wicked Law*, ſaith an antient Father, is no Law, but a corruption of Law; and a baſtard law cannot legitimate an action, nor make a proceeding iuſtifiable: otherwiſe, Why curſe wee the antient *Almains*, amongſt whom, theft hath its approbation, as an exerciſe of vertue? Why condemne we the *Scythians*, who imitating the *Weſt Indians*, haue their ſer-

Lawes haue enacted wicked things.

uants buryed aliue with them, yea and their owne wiues? VVhy haue we abrogated ſo many antient Lawes, made by our anceſtors, and that haue continued in vſe many ages? Is it not for that ſome of them are contrary to the Law Diuine; others of them repugne the Law of Nature, and ſauour more of barbarouſneſſe, then humanity? The Law which decrees a Duell in default of proofe, is found amongſt the antient conſtitutions of the Seliques *Allemans*, *Danes*, *Engliſh*, *Normans*, and other people of the weſt; from whom it is ſaid to take its originall. But, what were theſe Law-makers, that haue made this Law for vs?

VVere they not ſuch themſelues, who decreed human Sacrifices to their falſe Gods, and ſpared not the offering vp in Sacrifice of their owne Infants? VVere they not ſuch who accounted thoſe vnfortunate men and women, to haue an heroicall reſolution that died by their owne hands? VVere they not ſuch which approued inceſtuous copulations, and that in

in a word made lawes as it were in despight of God and Nature? But we are not to wonder if they decreed a Duell, in the question of Fact, seeing that the greater part of those nations, do hardly take any other course in affaires where the right is controuerted, which notwithstanding is by all found fault with at this day. *Froton* King of *Denmarke*, commanded that all differences arising in his Kingdome, should by combat be decided, and that is the reason, Why the *Scythians* who maintaine their right by force, and haue no other Religion, Law, nor Iustice then the sword; haue accustomed to plant their grouds with trees, wherof they made their speares, and to adore them as a supreme Deity. Contrariwise, the *Easterne* people, whose morall Vertues and Ciuility wee imitate; The *Assyrians*, *Egyptians*, *Persians*, *Hebrewes*, and also the *Greeks* and *Romans*, neuer admitted of the Duell, but in fact of good warre: This Law then ought to be examined by that which is the rule of all others, as being deriued from God, for

we ſpeake not of particular ordinances which were in vſe onely in the commonwealth of the *Iewes*, but of that eternall Law, expreſſed in the Sacred Writ, which remaines in perpetuall ſtrength, & binds all kinds of nations, and when there happens a doubtfull cauſe, if Iudges would preuent thoſe reſentmẽts which their conſciences will make them feele, they cannot know a better way then this, to wit, To iudge an other by the ſame Law, which ſhall iudge them all at the laſt day.

The examples of Duels cannot be of better regard then the laws which produced them: *England* hath ſeene many fight in caſe of accuſations of treaſon, and it maters not to bring many inſtances of this nature, whereof Hiſtories are full: *Francis* the firſt, King of *France*, would neuer condeſcent that two Noble men of his Court ſhould fight in ſingle combat, although they greatly deſired it, ſaying, that a Prince ought to ſuffer a thing whereof can come no good. His ſucceſſor *H.* 2.

(who

(who dyed after by a blow receiued in Tournament) granted a duell, but amongſt a thouſand of theſe combats one ſhall hardly finde two which haue brought to light that which was ſought after, to wit, the manifeſtation of the Fact, the truth thereof being ſtifled in the blood of the Duelliſts, ſo that it is oftner an act of Tragedie, then of true Iuſtice.

Before I anſwer the Obiections, which may be alledged, we will encounter this Duell with theſe arguments following.

1. *Section,* It is certaine and cannot be gainſaid, that this way is caſuall hazardous, and by conſequent deceiueable, I acknowledge that humane actions, which are various, contingent and infinit, cannot proue themſelues with ſo much certainty, as can Mathematicall concluſions, which haue infallible demonſtrations; euer ſome incertainty goes a long with proofes. One and the ſame action ſhall oftentimes be diſguiſed in ſo many ſeue-

rall

rall shapes, that the Eie of Iustice cannot discerne the true figure, the witnesses may be lyars; Oaths, false; Writings, counterfait; Iudges, corrupt; and the parties owne confession, oftentimes betraies their owne innocence: It hath been seene that some weary of an irkesome life, haue voluntary accused themselues of crimes which they neuer committed; the Torture hath somtimes caused men to say that which neuer was; and many also daue endured it, which haue stood in maintenance of deeds as false, as falseneſſe it selfe: VVhat then can Iudges doe alwaies groping in the dark, and when the brighteſt lights, which they can bring, cannot find out the illusions, which lie hidden in these obscurities? I answer, that so long as they go a regular pace and that they containe themselues within the bounds by good Lawes prescribed, they cannot erre, when vpon the deposition of two or three witnesses, not to bee excepted against; it chanceth that an innocent is condemned: the conscience of the wit-

witneſſes is guilty, not that of the Iudge, for he hath proceeded, according to Laws Diuine and Naturall; but if ſuch a miſchiefe happen through his ſteering other courſes, then ſuch as the Law of God hath commanded him, how can he hope that that Law will ſerue to warrant his proceeding; And beſides, the teſtimonies and circumſtances, which often are ſuborned, yet haue a naturall relation with the Fact; but things in their owne nature caſuall, cannot giue any intelligence herof: VVhat a brutiſh proceeding then is it to caſheer Iuſtice, which is Sacred; for to entertaine the vanity of a thing contingent caſuall and abuſiue? Is it not iuſt as if one ſhould put all to chance, as the *Democrituſſes* of our age vſe to ſpeake?

2. *Section.* This proceeding is contrary to the fundamentall principles of Iuſtice, which adiudge the right not to him which hath the ſtronger body, or which hath more dexterity in his weapon; but to him that is knowne to maintaine a

iuſt cauſe, yet it is a thing thereby and conformable to the order of Nature, that the ſtrong ſhould ouercome the weake, ſo as it happens the weaker man though innocent, is conquered by the power of his ſtronger aduerſary. All the precautions which may bee vſed (as the giuing them armes alike, and the taking away of all aduantages from either partie) cannot ſo perfectly equaliſe their forces, their dexterity, their ſpirit, their courages, but there will euer bee an inequality. And moreouer, a man is not at all times in like ſtrength and during the paſſage, of ſuch an action a beame of the Sun; the ſhaking of a leafe, a little ſand blowne in the eye, or vnder the feet, a ſudden obiect, a cloud in the aire, a fright, a thought may vndoe one of the parties: but letting paſſe all this is it not alwayes a courſe oppoſite to Iuſtice, to iudge a man more by the ſucceſſe of his ſword, then by the goodneſſe of his cauſe?

3. *Section.* And to anſwer to the obiection, that the cauſe is a doubtfull cauſe, and

and that the ſingle combat is decreed to dilucidate and manifeſt the ſame; let vs ſee what will be the euent herein: Either the two combatants eſcape, or both of them ſtay vpon the place, or onely one of the twaine, if it chance they bee ſeparate vpon equall aduantage, what proofe will the Duell afford vs? Shall the truth of the Fact bee for euer vnknowne? Then to what purpoſe ſerued it to endanger their liues, when ſome other way of attonement might haue beene found out? Had it not beene better to haue taken this knowne courſe, then to reioyce in their deſtruction, and engulph them into danger? And if both remaine dead in the field, what proofe will that make? How ſhall truth appeare to vs, when their misfortune is equall? Shall we attend till their ghoſt, from beneath, riſe to accord mattersi after their death? Or if the one terrified ouer his aduerſary and hauing his dagger held at his breaſt confeſſe himſelfe guilty, who can aſſure vs, that this acknowledgement is wrung from him,

more by the force of vertue, then by the feare of death? Or if he that lies groueling on the ground, weltering in his gore, nor hoping ought, nor fearing ought in this world, perſeuer in the proteſtation of his innocence, and dye making ſuch aſſertion, what ſhall we iudge in this caſe? The Iudges giue their ſuffrage to the conqueror; but I beleeue in their conſciences they adiuge the right to the vanquiſhed. A dying mans laſt words are of more validity, then many witneſſes; it is not to be preſumed that a Chriſtian would ſtaine his life with ſo criminall a falſity and act to the ouerthrow of his body, the perdition of his ſoule alſo; It remaines that we hold it not ſtrange, though God permit the innocent to bee vanquiſht, who though for ought beſides hee bee not guilty, hath deſerued this chaſtiſement, for defending his innocence by this vnlawfull way; but this excuſeth not the Promouers or Directors of this action, but more aggrauates their fault.

4. *Section.* For as it is certaine, that of two

two contending, the one of neceſſity muſt bee innocent; his life is equally endangered with that of the guilty: Equity, and humanity direct vs that it were better to pardon a guilty man, then endanger an innocent, but wee ſee both are obnoxious to the ſame danger. As a Turkiſh Sultan, that cut vp the ſtomach of thirteene of his Pages, to know which of them had taken and eaten a certaine Melon, and would haue exerciſed that barbarous cruelty vpon threehūdred more of that band, if in a good houre for them, that fatall fruit had not beene found in the ſtomach of the fourteenth man.

Some will ſay, that they condemne them not to dye; But at leaſt it is apparant that they adiudge them to enieopard their liues; which if they eſcape, that is no thanks to the Law, which bound them to run the hazard; for that bloudy Lawe it ſelfe ordaineth, that the vanquiſhed, if he dye not by the hand of his Antagoniſt, bee diſpatcht by that of the Executioner. When one enioines a man to fight with

Lyons, or Buls, vpon condition to acquit him, if miraculouſly, or by ſome extraordinary relenting or gentleneſſe, hee free himſelfe from the pawes of thoſe furious Beaſts; is not this neuertheleſſe a condemning a man to the danger of death? Or when one experiments the force of a poyſon vpon the body of a guilty man, with a promiſe to grant him his life, in caſe the ſtrength of his complexion ſurmount that of the poyſon; is not this a kind of condemnation? In the Duell, then two men are expoſed to vndergoe this danger; is not this a monſtrous iniuſtice? For ordinarily a man is condemned, becauſe proofe is brought in againſt him; but heer quite contrary, a man is condemned; though nothing be prooued againſt him: one is condemned, I ſay, to hazard that which no man can reſtore againe, I meane, his life; If any man obiect that in war, a Soldier who ſtands ſuſpect of ſome fault, is commanded to bee the firſt that ſhould ſcale a breach, orto ſeeke out ſome dangerous place, or to vndergoe ſome o-

ther

ther ſeruice full of danger; I anſwer, if that man be in fault, the ordinance cannot be taxed of iniuſtice, that aſſignes him ſuch an expiation; but if he be innocent, yet is there no wrong done him, in ſo much as the law of armes may command men of more eminent ranke; who are bound to ſacrifice their liues for the good of the common weale. And therefore we muſt againe be mindfull of the difference betwixt a Duell, and thoſe actions; which are atcheiued in the warres. Moreouer, a Souldier, or Officer being ſuſpect, or accuſed of treaſon; there can no better courſe be taken to know the truth, then to make a triall, by ſome ſeruice; which may either manifeſt his perfidiouſneſſe or loyalty; for ſuch actions diſcloſe the inward intentions of a man, by a naturall dependance, and produce effects of like nature vnto the Fact, which cannot bee certainly decided: But in a Duell there is no iot of likelyhood, that any proofe ſhould appeare thereby amongſt ſuch as profeſſe themſelues men: for can wee in any

any reaſon draw this concluſion, that one man is a traytor, becauſe an other hath killed him.

It may be too, ſome will ſay, that this Duell is not by command, but onely vpon ſufferance, that the two parties themſelues requeſt it, and they being agreed, there is no wrong offered them, ſeeing, it is their owne will and ſeeking: To which I ſay onely this, that it is the office of the Magiſtrate to cohibit and reſtraine the paſſions of particular men, and not to comply with their deſires of killing one another. In ancient time, in ſome Common-weales, there was an ordinance made for the diſparagement, and diſgrace of ſuch that kill themſelues by their owne priuate authority; and the purport of the Law, was, that if any one deſired death, he ſhould make his repaire to the Magiſtrate, who hauing heard what he could ſay; iudged if his requeſt to dye were reaſonable, and it being granted ſo to bee; gaue him leaue either to hang himſelfe, or cut his owne throat; otherwiſe,

it

it is a crime to dye without leaue. But the publike Magiſtrate ought rather to reine in the fury of the enraged, then giue them a paſtport to ſlay one another; otherwiſe, to permit a murther, is to commit it.

5. *Section.* Now, as we know that the intention of each of the two, is to kill his aduerſary, in caſe he deny not his words; if it chance that this fatall Lot fall vpon the innocent; can the Conſcience of the Iudges find reaſons ſufficient for their excuſe? Shall not the blood returne vpon their faces, & they neuer be quitted of this aſperſion: And it will not ſerue their turnes, to ſay they had no ſuch intention, for they cannot deny to haue expoſed the innocent (which ſoeuer of the two hee were) to a deſperate condition, to haue ingaged him in a Combat, and to haue giuen authority to the hand that perpetrated the murder.

6. *Section.* Nay, I ſay more, that if two crimmall perſons, duly attainted and conuicted bee condemned to death, the

Magiſtrate cannot in good Conſcience aſſigne a Duell, that they may ſlay each other, for that were to make them executors and homicides of themſelues: but in a Duell (whereof wee treat) it is farre worſe, for heere the innocent ſhall bee the butcher of the nocent, or (which is more horrid) heere the guilty ſhall put to death the innocent, or, which fals out there, they are both in perill to bee butchers of each other.

7. *Section.* To ſay that in a Duell, we await what ſucceſſe God will ſend, is a friuolous excuſe; ill proceedings haue ſometimes good ſucceſſe, but that is by accident: Wee are not bound to *Pilate* for hauing condemned *Ieſus Chriſt*; hoping that God will pardon our proceedings. And more, who hath told vs that God will adiudge as we deſire; to wit, to the aduantage of the innocent? Thinke wee that God is bound to conforme himſelfe to our intentions, and to execute our ſentence? Or if it be only to ſee what hee will doe therein, is not this

this impudently to tempt him, and to make an encrochment vpon his hidden iudgements?

8. *Section.* But it is yet more cruell; To what danger are their two ſoules expoſed? If one of the two be ſlaine in the field, what ſhall become of that ſoule, which departs out of this World: alſo ſwolne with vengeance, all ſet on fire with deadly rancour, fretting in his owne gall and thirſting after the bloud of his neighbour? Is it likely to bee receiued into the boſome of the Patriarks? Why then doe wee hazard ſo ſwiftly the ſaluation of a ſoule, which the Sonne of God bought ſo dearely, and which cannot bee bought againe; but at the price of ſo many teares, which he hath ſhed with great cries, and of ſo much blood hee hath ſhed to waſh it? Thinke we not that he will demand it at our hands?

9. *Section.* Let vs oppoſe to this barbarous law, the ſtipulations of Chriſtian Diuines, who call this Duell, an inuention of him that hath beene a murderer

from the beginning, who when in effect there were but two brethren in the world, instigated the one to kill the other. Let vs oppose against it the Canons & Law of the Church, which haue thundred forth Anathema's, and Excommunications against these bloody homicides; and which haue prosecuted their very ashes, denying them Christian buriall, and condemned their memory as abominable and worthy to be execrated.

10. *Section.* Finally, let vs not oppose the Lawes of God, which haue vouchsafed to descend to actions of lesse consequence. These holy Laws forbid to speake wrong of a deafe man, to lead the blind out of the way, to mouzell the Oxe that treadeth out the corne, and many other ordinances of like nature; But how comes it that we find not any rule, in a matter so important as is the Duell? Iudiciall proceedings are there well prescribed at large, and in diuers places; and vpon what proofes Iudges ought to found their iudgements. The same in

Fact

Fact of accuſation, and touching Delators. The verball depoſition of two or three witneſſes, ſpecially in a matter of life and death, *Deut. Chap. 17. verſ. 6.* The Oath, which the Holy Ghoſt affirmes to bee an end of Controuerſies, *Hebr. Chap. 6. verſ. 16.* And an Oath is ordained in caſe of goods depoſited, *Exodus Chap. 22. verſ. 8.* Writings and Seales in matters Ciuill, *Ierem. Chap. 21.* The confeſſion of the guilty, *Ioſua Chap. 7. ver. 19.* Preſumptuous and ſtrong coniectures; as when *Salomon* adiudged the Infant to her that was more willing that another woman ſhould enioy him all, then to ſuffer him to bee cut into halfes; But concerning proofe, or deciſion by Battaile, our Sauiour hath not aduiſed thereof, ſo that he hath made no rules concerning Barriers; the equality of the Armes, the calling to the Combatants; the going downe of the ſun, the ſilence of the Spectators, and other circumſtances. In a word, this fighting reduced into an art is none of his inuention.

Alſo amongſt all the Great courages, which the Holy Story commends to vs; and amongſt them, which often had many particular quarrels to fight; wee cannot finde the practiſe of this Duell.

Dauid had an enemy in the Court of *Saul*, to wit, *Doeg* the Edomite, who forbore not to accuſe him before his Prince, breaking out defiance, and outrage in his hearing; But *Dauid* did neuer demand the combat to right his innocence, and to make this impoſtor ſwallow his lye; for, as concerning what he did againſt the Giant, wee haue ſeene, that that action was of another nature; and from this we may conclude, that the Duell is a crime, for whatſoeuer we find vnwarranted by precept or example in the Scripture, is without Faith; now whatſoeuer is done without Faith, is a ſin.

11. *Section.* Let vs adde to this, that when the truth of a Fact, cannot be manifeſted by lawfull meanes it is a tempting of God to bee obſtinately bent by firie force, to know that which he would haue hid

hid from vs; but it is a bloody boldneſſe, to ſeeke for the truth in the blood and in the heart of a man, like thoſe wretched ſoules, that ſacrifice humane Creatures to know by their entrals, and ſhall often get nothing, but reſentment & repentance vpon the whole matter, if it chance the fa& be manifeſted afterward, when the miſchiefe is paſt repaire; as hath beene ſeene in the famous example of two men, one of which charged the other to haue committed theft; they fought in ſingle combat; the partie accuſed was ſlaine; ſome ſhort time after, the theft was found in the hands of a third partie that was guilty thereof. The Iudges cannot now raiſe againe the poore innocent, but muſt ſuffer the ſting of Conſcience, all their life long.

12. *Section.* And laſtly, let vs ſee if a Duell be to any purpoſe, for the determining of a difference; what inconuenience can enſue vpon a difference vndecided? It may be the two parties may bee fighting continually; Is it then fit to make them

them kill one another to day, to the end, they may not doe it at another time? or is it better they ſhould be ſlaine with ceremony to the end, they may dye by priuiledge? The remedy is worſe then the miſchiefe, and it is worth laughing at, were it not an offence to God. If this way of a Duell bee lawfull betweene two perſons, why ſhall it not be vſed betweene two families vpon like occaſion? and euermore the moſt barbarous neuer liked that Magiſtrates ſhould permit a Combat between two kindreds or two families, the conſequent would extend to the whole cómonwealth; and laſtly, one part of the Eſtate would deſtroy the other, which would proue the Forerunner of deſolation: In a word, this courſe would extirpate all Seates of Iuſtice, and ouerthrow all order and politie.

What then is the duty of Iudges in ſuch like occaſions? I ſay not that they ſhould doe as that Iudge, that being not able to giue his reſolution in a Capitall matter; and fearing to doe wrong to the one, or

the

the other, would not giue a definitiue Sentence; but decreed onely that the parties ſhould appeare within a hundred yeeres, to abide what ſhould bee iudged to be right: A terme long enough and ſuch as would free them from Court, and proceſſe vnleſſe ſome other Iudge had interpoſed himſelfe in the matter. But to ſpeake ſeriouſly, the Iudges cannot bee ignorant what is preſcribed vnto them by good Lawes, to wit: *That in euery doubtfull caſe, the Accuſed ought to haue the aduantage, and that hee muſt pronounce in his fauour: That the Accuſer not prouing the crime obiected; the Partie charged ought to be acquitted.* This rule of Law is equitable and approuable; If hee erre in ſteering other courſe, pure Innocence ſhall reſide in more ſecurity in the Dens of Lyons, in the Foreſts, or among the Dragons of the Wilderneſſe, then in the Palace of Iuſtice. There is nothing ſo eaſy as to accuſe, and calumniation with a brazen forhead, an impudent throat, and audacity to perſiſt inleaſings, are ſuch things

ever ouerwhelme the modesty of the innocent.

Yet neuertheleſſe, I acknowledge that when a crime touching the Eſtate in queſtion, many reaſons there may bee, wherefore one ought not euer to bind the Informer to all the ſtricktneſſe which are vſed to accuſers that faile to proue their accuſations; if a crime of this nature come to my knowledge and I diſcouer it not, I make my ſelfe guilty; and if the fact come to light, at any time, by another meanes; my ſilence will bee enough to hang me. It ſtands the State vpon, that there bee a moderation vſed in this behalfe: To impoſe ſilence at all times, to Delators, that are not able to proue; would produce but bad conſequences, for many conſpiracies would be plotted, with more audacity and ſecurity. In all Eſtates it is permitted to whomſoeuer hee bee to diſcouer crimes, by a ſecret way: hence it is that an Informer, or Delecter of ſome Crime, write downe in ſome ſcroll (without telling his Name) the Crime,

Crime, the Authors and Confederates, and all circumſtances, which are come to his knowledge; hee caſt this ſcroll into a Trunck, which is placed within certain Churches for that end; the Magiſtrats comming to ſee the Trunck, find many relations, which ſerue them to diſcouer great miſteries: Now though this way bee not free from inconueniences, and that there can be no proofe made thereby (the informer being vnknowne) this good comes thereby, that many hidden practiſes, which otherwiſe had not beene brought to light, are by this diſcouery divulged. The Prince makes his obſeruations of things thus diſcouered, and the diſcouerer beeing vnknowne, remaines in ſecurity; I conclude, that a wiſe Prince hauing regard to the condition of the parties, to the conſequences, and other good reſpects may conſerue vnſtayned both the honour of the one, and of the other.

The greateſt difficulty, ſeems to be this, In two contradictories, the one being ne-

ceſſarily falſe, how can one acquit the accuſed, without making the accuſer giue himſelfe the lye, and by conſequent to ſurceaſe, but this moderation may bee vſed, to wit, that one content himſelfe to ſay; That he may not goe forward in a fact without proofe, yet it were fit to enioyne perpetuall ſilence, and neuer more to complaine vnder a great paine.

Be it as it will, of all expedients, which one can take, the Duell is the worſe. This way is practiſed by men barbarous and vnnaturall; it is caſuall and deceitfull: It profanes the Sacredneſſe of Iuſtice: It ouerthrowes vniuerſall Maximes: It produceth no certainty: It puts in ieopardy the Innocent, as well as the guilty: It tempts God many wayes: It makes men ſlayers of their neighbours and themſelues: It cozens men of ſaluation, and carries their ſoules to the Gates of Hell: It is condemned by the wiſer part of Chriſtians: It is not warranted by the Law of God: It is without example, from the practiſe of the faithfull. To conclude,

clude, it is a poyſonous antidote, more pernicious then the miſchiefe, which one ſhould preuent. And when it produceth the fruit deſired, it is wretched fruit muſt bee purchaſſed at ſuch a price. *Dauid* in his ſickneſſe earneſtly deſiring to drinke of the Wels of Bethlehem; two Souldiers, would haue hazarded their liues to fetch ſome, hee proteſted hee would not drinke the blood of thoſe men. Nothing is ſo ſacred as the blood of a Man, and the blood of Beaſts is not imployed but in Sacrifices. Let vs not forget the Law expreſſed in the 21. *Chap.* of *Deut.* concerning the manſlaughter vnknowne, and the expiation thereof in the ſtony vally. The ſolemne prayer which was made in that ceremony, may be applyed to the ſubiect of our diſcourſe: *O Lord be mercifull vnto vs, and lay not innocent blood to the charge of thy people.*

THE MANNER AND forme of Combats anciently obſerued before the Kings of *England*.

WHen vpon the exhibit of the Bill in Court before the Conſtable, the Appellant failes in the proofe of his Appeale, and cannot by witneſſe nor any other manner of way make the right of his demands appeare, he may offer to make proofe of his intent vpon the Defendant with his body by force : And if the Defendant will ſay, he will ſo defend his honour, the Conſtable, as Vicar generall in Armes (for ſo is my Author) vnder the King, hath power to ioyne his iſſue by battaill, and to aſſigne the time and place, ſo that it be not within forty dayes after the iſſue in that manner ioyned, vnleſſe the agreement of the parties giue themſelues a ſhorter day. And vpon the ioyning of the iſſue by Combat, the Conſtable ſhall ſignifie to them their Armes, which are, a Gauntlet and ſhort Sword, and a long Sword and Dagger : And then the Appellant and Defendant

Defendant ſhall both finde able pledges for their appearance at a certaine time and a day ſet, before the Sunne be come to ſome one degree certainly named, to acquit their pledges, and the Plaintiffe to make proofe of his charge; and the Appealee to make the beſt defence he can for his honour, and that in the meane time neither of them, by themſelues, nor by any well-willers of theirs, ſhall lie in ambuſh to aſſault or worke any grieuance to the other.

The King ſhall finde the field for performance of the Combat, which muſt bee ſixty foot in length, and in breadth forty.

It muſt bee a hard, and firme ground, nothing ſtony, and liſted about, by the aduice of the Marſhall, with good and ſeruiceable railing. There muſt bee two doores, the one in the Eaſt, and the other in the Weſt; each of them of the height of ſeuen feet or more, ſo that a horſe cannot leap ouer them; and theſe doores are to bee kept by the Sergeant at Armes.

On the day of the battell the King ſhall ſit in a Chaire mounted on a ſcaffold, and a low ſeat ſhall bee made for the Conſtable and Marſhall at the foot of the deſcent from the ſcaffold; and ſitting there, they demand the pledges of the Appellant, and Defendant to come into the liſts, and render themſelues the Kings priſoners, vntill the Appellant and Defendant are come in, and haue made oath.

When the Appellant comes to the field, he ſhall come to the doore in the Eaſt armed, and ſo appointed

pointed as the Court did order, and ſhall there attend the comming of the Conſtable, to bring him in.

And the Conſtable ſhall demand of him, who he is that comes thus armed to theſe liſts, what name he beares, and the cauſe of his comming.

The Appellant ſhall anſwere, I am ſuch a man, *A.* of *B.* Appellant, who am come mounted and armed as you ſee, to the doore of theſe liſts, to demand an entry, to make an endeuour to proue my intent againſt *C.* of *D.* and to acquit my pledges.

Then the Conſtable, taking vp his Beauer, ſo aſſuring himſelfe he is the ſame perſon who is the Appellant, ſhall throw open the doore, and bid him enter in his Armes, with his victuals, and other neceſſary attendance, and his Councell with him, and ſhall then bring him before the King, and thence to his ſeat where he ſhall attend vntill the Defendant come.

Then the Appellant ſhall make a requeſt to the Conſtable and Marſhall to diſcharge his pledges; and the Conſtable and Marſhall ſhall informe his Maieſty, that ſince the body of the Appellant is entred the liſts to make proofe on his Appellee, his pledges by Law ought to haue a diſcharge. And after leaue granted by the King, the Conſtable ſhall diſcharge them. If at the time appoynted, the Defendant comes not in to his defence, the King doeth command the Conſtable to call him by the Marſhall; And the Marſhall ſhall command the Lieutenant; and the Lieute-

nant shall command the Marshall of the Heralds of the South ; If it be in the March of *Clarencieux*; & if the Marshall of the Heralds of the king of the South be not there, then a Herald of the March of King *Clarencieux* shall call him. And if the performance of the Battel be on the North side of the riuer of *Trent*, in the March of king *Norrey*, the Marshall of the king of the North shall demand him: And in his default, one of the Heralds of the March of King *Norrey* shall call for the Defendant, thus:

Oyes, oyes, oyes, C. of *D.* Defendant, Come to your action which you haue vndertaken this day, to acquit your pledges in the presence of the King, Constable, and Marshall, and defend your selfe against *A.* of *B.* in that he shall question and charge thee.

And if he appeare not, he shall be in like manner thrice demanded at the foure corners of the lists ; only the second time hee is proclaimed ; at the end the Herauld shal say, The day is farre passed. So at the third time, the Herauld at the halfe houre after three of the clock in the afternoone, by the commandement of the Constable, shall thus summon him.

C. of *D.* Defendant, saue your honour, and come in to the action you haue vndertaken at this day; the time is far gone, the halfe houre is spent ; come into the lists vpon the perill that shall follow thereon, or elfe you come too late.

Then when they haue both appeared, the Register of the Constables Court shall in writing obserue

obſerue their entrance, the order, and time, and the manner, whether on foot or mounted, their Armes, the colour of their horſes, and how their horſes are harneſſed, leſt their horſes, or their harneſſe ſhould bee changed, or otherwiſe imbezelled.

Then the Conſtable ſhall know whether it will pleaſe the Kings Maieſtie to appoint any of his Nobles to counſell and aduiſe them.

The Conſtable ſhall employ two Knights or Eſquires to the Appellant, to keep his ſtanding, and to care that hee obſerue no charme, ſpell, or other ill Arts, vntill he hath made oath; and with the like charge, two others ſhall be diſpatched to the Defendant.

And when the Conſtable hath asked his Maieſties pleaſure, whether his Highneſſe will receiue their oathes in perſon, or that the Conſtable and Marſhall take them in the liſts, calling for the Appellant, with his Counſell, he ſhall demand of the Counſell, if they will make any further proteſtation, that they ſhould now put them in; for this time is peremptory, ſo as hereafter no proteſtation ſhall be receiued.

Then the Conſtable ſhall haue a Clerke ready by him with a booke; and the Conſtable ſhall cauſe his Regiſter to read the whole Bill to the Appellant, and ſhall ſay to him,

You *A.* of *B.* doe you know this to bee your Bill, and the complaint which you exhibited in Court before me? Laying your right hand vpon this booke, you muſt ſweare the truth of your Bill

in all points, from the first to the last charge in it, and that it is your intent to proue vpon *C.* of *D.* the contents thereof to be true, so aid you God.

The forme of it is thus, Thou *A.* of *B.* this thy Bill is sooth in all points and articles conteined therein from the beginning to the end; and it is thine intent to proue them this day so to bee, on the aforesaid *C.* of *D.* So God thee helpe and hallow.

This done, the Appellant is remanded to his stand.

The Defendant shall be in like manner sworne vpon the truth of his defence.

And this their first oath they ought to take kneeling; but by the fauour of the Constable and Marshall they somtimes do it standing.

Then the Constable shall by the Marshall, call the Appellant before him, and tender him his second oath, which (if the Constable giue leaue) he may take sitting.

A. of *B.* laying your hand on the book this secõd time, you shal sweare that you come no otherwise appointed then as by vs the Constable & Marshall hath beene assigned; that is, with a short Sword, and a Gauntlet; a long Sword, and a Dagger; that you haue not any knife, or any other pointed instrument or engine, small or great; no stone, no herbe of vertue; no charme, experiment, or any other inchantment, by whose power you beleeue you may the easier ouercome your aduersary, who within these lists shall oppose you in his defence; and that you trust not in any thing more then

then in God, your body, and the merits of your quarrell; So God you help.

Then being conducted to his place, the keepers of the liſts ſhall bee put out, and the Defendant in the ſame manner ſhall be demeaned.

Then the Conſtable and Marſhall ſhall ſend for them both before them, and the Conſtable ſhall name the Appellant and Defendant, and ſhall ſay to them both thus;

Take yee each other by the right hand, and I command that neither of you bee ſo hardy as violently to handle one another, vpon your perill; and laying their left hands on the booke, the Conſtable ſhall ſay,

I charge you *A.* of *B.* Appellant, by your faith, and your right hand, which is incloſed in the hand of your aduerſary *C.* of *D.* that you vſe your power, and make vſe of all aduantages to make good your appeale vpon *C.* of *D.* your enemy, the Defendant, to force him to a rendring of himſelfe into your hands by demanding of a parley, or with your owne hand to kill him before you depart out of theſe liſts, by that height of the Sunne, and age of the day you haue aſſigned you by vs the Conſtable and Marſhall, by your faith; And ſo God you help.

The ſame forme ſhall bee obſerued on the part of the Defendant; and then they ſhall be brought each of them to their places, the liſts cleared of the Councell and ſeruants on both ſides.

The oathes thus paſt, an Herauld by the command of the Conſtable and Marſhall, ſhall make

Oyes thirce, and ſhall ſay,

We the Conſtable and Marſhall in the Kings name charge and command euery man of what quality or condition ſoeuer he bee, that hee approach not within foure foot to theſe liſts, nor that hee ſpeake any word, make any noiſe, giue any ſigne, nor by his countenance or otherwiſe direct either of theſe parties, *A.* of *B.* or *C.* of *D.* Appellant and Defendant, to take any aduantage the one vpon the other, by any ſigne ſo giuen, vpon paine of life and member, and the forfeiture of his chattels.

Next, the Conſtable and Marſhall ſhall aſſigne the place where the king at Armes and the Heraulds ſtanding may haue a full ſight of the action within the liſts : for now they are to attend the Appellant and Defendant, and miniſter to them in what they ſhall command them ; and if either of them faint, or haue either deſire to eat or to drinke of their victuals they bring with them into the liſts, it is the office of the Heraulds to bee attending vpon them. If the Appellant will either eat or drink, hee muſt firſt deſire the good leaue of the Defendant, which ſhall be by a king at armes ſignified to the Conſtable and Marſhall, and they to attend his Maieſty with the deſire of the Appellant, and the conſent of the Defendant, and pray his Maieſties allowance of it. And if either the Appellant, or the Defendant haue a neceſſity to doe any other thing, the Heraulds and the Purſuiuants ſhall attend them.

After this the Conſtable and Marſhall freeing the

the liſts from people of all conditions, except a Knight and two Eſquires of the Conſtables train, and the Lieutenant ; a Knight and two Eſquires of the Marſhals retinue, which ſhall bee in Armour, bearing Lances in their hands, which are not to bee barbed with any iron, to part them when his Maieſty ſhall giue the word.

Theſe Knights and Eſquires are neither to bring ſwords, kniues, bowes, nor daggs into the liſts.

They of the Conſtables ſide are to keepe one corner of the liſts, and there lay themſelues flat on the ground : and in like manner ſhall they of the Marſhals ſide beſtow themſelues at another corner of the liſts ; for none may appeare vpright within the liſts ſaue the Conſtable and Marſhall.

And if the King be not preſent, then the Conſtable and Marſhall ſhall ſit in the place of the King, and the Lieutenant be within the liſts.

But if the King bee preſent, then the Conſtable ſitting vpon a ſeat before the King within the liſts, as the Kings Vicar generall, ſhall command his Lieutenant to accompany the Appellant, and the Marſhall or his Lieutenant with the like reſpect ſhall accompany the Defendant.

And the Conſtable ſitting at the foot of the ſeat Royall, ſhall ſpeake with a lowd voyce ; Let them go, let them go to doe their endeauours.

This ſaid, the Appellant going to the Defendant (ſtanding in the preſence of the King) ſhall with all his ſtrength aſſault him ; and the Defendant ſhall be as wary as he can in his defence.

The

The Conſtable and Marſhall, or their Lieutenants, ought to be within hearing, and alſo within ſight, if in caſe either of them ſpeake, or make any ſigne he will renounce his quarrell; or if the Kings Maieſty ſay but Hoe, or giue any other ſignall, then they who are within the liſts with the Conſtable and Marſhall, throwing their Lances betwixt the Appellant and the Defendant, and ſo parting them, they ſhall not giue way to either of them to aſſault the other, vntill the King command they bee free, or that the Conſtable declare his Maieſties pleaſure to bee ſo, by ſaying, Let them go, the King wils it.

Notwithſtanding that the Conſtable hath giuen the Defendant a ſet time to come in to his performance, yet, in caſe he commeth not according to the appointment of the Conſtable, of right, iudgement ſhall not paſſe againſt him vpon his default, vntill the firſt halfe houre after three of the clock be cleerly paſſed, let the cauſe be treaſonable or otherwiſe.

But the Appellant whoſe ſuite it is, ought to be there at his preciſe time, when the Conſtable ſhall firſt demand him, elſe his pledges haue forfeited their ſecurity.

The Appellant and Defendant ſhall be ſearched by the Conſtable and Marſhall, their weapons and armes queſtioned in all points, that they bee auowable, and no engine or deuice not honourably iuſtifiable in them. And if they finde any ſuch practice, the party ſhall bee outed of that weapon: for, reaſon, ciuility, and the law of Armes

Armes will vpon no condition, in acts of this high performance, admit of trechery, or baſe conſpiracy.

The Appellant and Defendant ſhall, as they themſelues agree, cloath their bodies; for that is left to themſelues, only the Conſtable ſhall examine that they both haue the ſame Armour, or other defence vpon his body.

If one of them deſire his ſword to be ſhortned, ſo that it bee ſhorter then the meaſure of the ſtandard, the other is not bound to abate the length of his weapon: But if they once agree to fight with ſwords longer then the ſtandard allowes, at the day of the action within the liſts, either of them may demand to haue his weapon made to anſwere the ſtandard, and the other is in honour bound to make his conformable, being a demand lawfull, not vpon fancy, and taſting of no priuate way or aduantage.

Now the Conſtable and Marſhall are to beat tentiue to the King, if his Maieſty ſhall pleaſe to command the Combatants ſhould bee parted to take breath, or for any other purpoſe; and in any caſe they muſt haue eſpeciall care how they part and diuide them; and that at the time when they interpoſe, they bee both of them in the ſame degree or poſſibility, and neither of them in the mercy nor in the hand of the other.

The Conſtable and Marſhall ſhall not ſuffer them to whiſper, or haue any priuate diſcourſe; for they are the witneſſes, and in their breaſts lies the record of their words, and in no other place.

And if the battell bee grounded on a cauſe of treaſon, hee that is conuicted and diſcomfited, ſhall be diſarmed by the command of the Conſtable and Marſhall, one corner of the liſts broken downe in diſgrace of the party becoming recreant, and being faſtned to a horſe, ſhall bee dragg'd from the place where he ſo loſt his Armes to the block, and haue his head ſeuered from his body, or be hanged by the neck, or otherwiſe, according to the ſeuerall vſages of the Country.

It is the office of the Marſhall to accompany the party to the place, and there in his view to ſee execution done, and all the ſentence performed, and that aſwell of the ſide of the Appellant as the Defendant. For good conſcience, equity, aud the law of the field do exact, that the Appellant if in caſe he be conuicted, and becommeth a man vanquiſhed in his proofe, that hee incurre the ſame paine and hazard the Defendant ſhould haue done.

But if the cauſe be any other crime then treaſon, hee that is ſo by the body of his aduerſary conuicted, ſhall loſe his Armes within the liſts, and thence be led out to the place of his ſuffering, which is directed by the vſage of the Country; and this aſwell of the Appellant as the Defendant, as aforeſaid; onely hee ſhall not bee dragged, nor the railes broken, vnleſſe it bee in caſe of treaſon, and not otherwiſe.

But if it be meerely an act of Armes, a tryall by challenge allowed by the grace of the King, Conſtable, and Marſhall; he that in ſuch a Combat

bat confeſſeth himſelfe vanquiſhed, ſhall be diſarmed, degraded, and being led to the skirt of the liſt, he ſhall be toſſed and throwne ouer the barrs, without any further puniſhment.

If it pleaſe the King to take the difference, and the iudgement thereof into his owne hand; and command them to bee friends without any further controuerſie: Then the Conſtable taking the Appellant, and the Marſhall the Defendant, ſhall bear thẽ both before the King: And the King ſhall by the Conſtable ſignifie his pleaſure vnto them; Then they ſhall be both of them lead together vnto one of the gates of the liſts, and be ſo conueied out of the liſts, in all points as they entered the liſts; and ſhall be ſo conueied out of the liſts, in the ſame Article of time, that of them no man may ſay, A firſt was out, or A laſt within the liſts: For, ſince the King hath into his own hands taken the conſideration of the quarrell; it were diſhonorable that either of the ſides, in a Battaile withdrawne by the word of a King, ſhould ſuffer any diſhonor, the one more then the other. And the antient tenet and opinion hath been, that he that is firſt out of the Liſts ſuffers a diminution of honor, the field being his in honor, that is laſt poſſeſſor of it; For, he maketh it good.

There ought to be double liſts for the ſeruants of the Conſtable and Marſhall, and for the Sergeant at Armes of the King, who are to attend, and defend, that no offence, affray, outrage, or other miſdeameanor againſt the Cryes, made only in Court, be committed or ſuffered, or any affront

that may be meant againſt the Kings Maieſty, or the Laws and honor of Armes. Theſe men ought to be in compleat Armes.

The Conſtable and Marſhall, may bring what power they pleaſe with them into the field, and thoſe either Armed, or otherwiſe, at their Election.

The Kings Sergeants at Armes ſhall bee the keepers of the Doores, and Portals of the Liſts; and they are to make all Arreſts by the Commandment of the Conſtable and Marſhall; and ſuch ſo arreſted to aſſure.

The fee of the Conſtable is their ſteeds, and Armes, and all that they bring with them into the liſts, ſaue onely thoſe wherewith they fight; And of the partie ouercome, all his Armes and other things of Combat, are the right of the Conſtable.

The fee of the Marſhall, is onely the Liſts, Barres, Seates, and other works for that ſpectacle.

A CATALOGVE OF CERTAINE COMBATS, GRANTED BY THE KINGS OF ENGLAND.

EDMVND of the Race of *Weſt Saxons*, fought in Combat with *Canutus* King of *Denmarke*, for the poſſeſſion of the Crowne of *England*. In which fight both the Princes being weary, by conſent parted the Land betwixt them. *Anno* 1016.

Robert Mountfort accuſed *Henry of Eſſex* of Treaſon, affirming, that hee in a Iourney toward *Wlaes*, neere vnto *Colſhill*, threw away the Kings Standerd, ſaying the King was dead, and turned backe thoſe that went to the Kings ſuccour. *Henry* denyed the accuſation, ſo as the matter was to bee tryed by Combat: The place appointed for fight, was a little Iſle

neere vnto *Reading*. In this Combat, *Henry* was vanquiſhed, and fell downe dead, and at the ſuite of friends, licence was obtained that his body might bee buried by the Monkes of *Reading*. But it happened that the ſaid *Henry* recouered and became a Monke in that Abbey. *Anno* 1163. In the raigne of King *Henry* the ſecond.

Henry Duke of *Hereford*, accuſed *Thomas Mowbray* Duke of *Norfolke*, of certaine words by him ſpoken, as they rode betweene *London* and *Brainford*, tending vnto the Kings diſhonor. *Thomas* Duke of *Norfolke* denied to haue ſpoken any ſuch word, but *Henry* affirming his accuſation, the King granted the Combat, to bee performed at Couentry the ſeuenth of *September*, 1398. *Anno Rich.* 2. but the Combat was not performed, for the one, and the other party was baniſhed the Realme.

A combat was fought at *Weſtminſter* in the Kings preſence, betweene *Iohn Anſley* Knight, and *Thomas Catrington* Eſquire, whom the ſaid Knight had accuſed of Treaſon for ſelling the Caſtle of Saint *Sauiour*, which the Lord *Chandos* had builded in the Iſle of *Conſtantine* in *France*: In which Combat the Knight was victorious. *Anno* 1374. *Rich.* 2.

A Combat was granted vnto an Eſquier borne in *Nauarre*, to fight with an *Engliſh* Eſquire called *Iohn Welſh*, whom the *Nauarrois* accuſed of Treaſon. But the true cauſe of the *Nauarrois*, his malice was, that the ſaid *Welſh* had diſhonoured his wife as (being vanquiſhed) he confeſſed. The

King gaue ſentence hee ſhould be drawne, and hanged. *Anno* 1344. *Rich.* 2.

A Combat was fought betweene Sir *Richard Woodvile*, and one other Knight borne in *Spaine*. After the third blow giuen, the King ſtayed the fight. *Anno* 1441. *Henric.* 6.

A Combat was granted vnto *Iohn Viſcount* borne in *Cipres*, and *Thomas de la Marſh* Naturall ſonne vnto *Philip* King of *France*, in the Raigne of King *Edward* the third at *Weſtminſter*.

There was alſo another Combat, granted by the ſaid King *Edward*, which was fought neere *Barwick*, betwixt Sir *Iohn de Sitſilt*, and Sir *Iohn de Faukenham*, concerning thoſe Armes borne now by the honorable Familie of the *Cecils*; The Coate was challenged by *Sitſilt*, but worne by *Faukenham*; They began the fight, but it waſſoone determined by the King.

FINIS.

THE

First and ſecond part

of the Hiſtory of the famous *Euordanus* Prince of Denmark.

(·.·)

With the ſtrange Aduentures of Iago Prince of Saxonie: And of both theyr ſeuerall fortunes in Loue.

AT LONDON,
Printed by I. R. for R. B. and are to be ſold in Paules Church-yard, at the ſigne of the Sun.
1605.

THE

First and second part

of the History of the famous *Euer-*
dums Prince of Denmark.

(.·.)

With the strange Adventures of Iago
Prince of Saxonie: And of both theyr seuerall
Fortunes in Loue.

AT LONDON,
Printed by I. R. for [illegible] and are
to be sold in Paules [illegible]ard,
at the [illegible] Sun.
[illegible]

The firſt part of the Hiſtory of the famous *Euordanus*, Prince of Denmarke; with his aduentures, and fortune in Loue.

CHAP. I.

How King *Frederick* and his Queene walking to take the ayre, were aſſaulted by a company of Out-lawes, & how the Queene was deliuered of a child in the Forreſt.

YOV may read in the Chronicles of Denmarke, of the great loue betweene King Frederick, & the famous Aliſonne, Counteſſe of Flaunders. And how that after a long contention, betweene the ſaid Frederick, and Griffory Duke of Holland, the King married her in the great Cittie of Gaunt, to the extreame griefe of the ſaid Griffory, who thereupon gaue ouer all martiall exerciſes for a ſeaſon, vntill ſuch time as hee was reuenged, as you may more at large read of in the ſaid Chronicle, written by one Cleonido a Dane.

Not long after the ſaid marriage, the King hauing ſetled the eſtate of that Earledome, returned into Denmarke with his beautifull Queene, where at the arriuall, they were receiued with great honour and triumph by his ſubiects, who loued him as intirely, as it was poſſible for any ſubiects to loue their Prince, as appeared by their ſolemne proceſſions, ringing of bells, ſtately pagants, and other gallant ſhewes, which were preſented vnto him in euery Towne hee paſſed through. But comming into Maiance, which then was the chiefe Cittie of the kingdome,

hee was presented with such varietie of pleasing shewes, that it passeth my capacitie to describe them, likewise there were many excellent and learned Orations, pronounced by the chiefe schollers of the Vniuersitie of Maiance, setting forth the great loue of the people toward their Prince, and the ioy conceaued of his marriage with so excellent a Lady as was his Quéene. On the otherside, the King to gratefie his subiects louing mindes, shewed himselfe bountifull and liberall vnto all, to some by gifts, to others by promises and fayre words, and to all by pleasing gestures, so that one might rightly say, there was in him the liuely portrature of a most graue and prudent Prince, and in them the true shew of faithfull and louing subiects.

But as it alwaies happeth, when men think themselues in greatest felicitie, then whether it be by the instabilitie of Fortune, or else that the Fates and destinies haue so appointed it, they are oftentimes suddenly tumbled downe, into griefe and miserie. Euen so it happed with the King and Quéene, who liuing a while in this content, were suddenly driuen into great cares and perplexitie. Wherby we may perceiue, the diuine power of God to be such, that hee can pull downe Princes from their thrones, and restore them againe at his pleasure, as sometimes he did by Nabucadnezar and others, to the setting forth of his glorie and power.

Now was it hard about the Month of May, when as the fields and woods were deckt with Floras bowde, and on each spray sate louely birds, resounding heauenly harmonie. The prettie Nitingall, setting her speckled breast against a bryer, regarded not fond Terius foule desire, but chaunted forth her pleasant ditties. When as the King and Quéene, accompanied with a small traine of Lordes and Ladies whom they loued, one morning early stale forth of the Court secretly, to dispost themselues in the forrest, which was hard adioyning vnto the Citty walls, where they had not long remained, beholding the broad-shaded Okes, and stately loftie Pines, before that a company of Out-lawes,

who

who were baniſhed the Kingdome of Fraunce, had eſpyed them, and ſeeing they were no better prouided, ſet on them. Where one might haue beheld the Quéene and her Ladies ſo affrighted with this ſudden accident, flinge vp & downe, ſome hiding themſelues in one buſh, ſome in another. Others againe béeing more timerous, ſuncke downe where they ſtoode, not béeing able to flie away. But all was one, flie or tarry, for béeing purſued, they were all taken, and brought backe, ſaning onely the Quéene, who béeing carried forwards with the wings of feare, made ſuch haſt that ſhée eſcaped them all, béeing ſo appointed by the prouidence of God.

The King likewiſe & Noblemen béeing amazed at this vnlooked for euent, knew not well ſuddenly what to determine, but in the end, ſeeing no other remedy, reſolued to defend themſelues as well as they might. The King being at that time one of the moſt accompliſhed Knights in all Europe, layd on ſuch blowes amongſt them, that hee made an euident ſhew that hee was determined to ſell his life at an extreame déere rate. But beeing vnarmed, and hauing no other weapon but his ſword, and all his company beeing ſlaine out-right ſaning two, who were likewiſe grieuouſly wounded, was forſt perforce to yéelde to their pitti-leſſe mercy: who hauing obtaind victory, ſtript them all, as well Lords as Ladies of their coyne, and abilliments which were ought worth. And binding thoſe whom they thought might any waies worke them diſpleaſure, as by rayſing power to purſue them, or vnbinding their fellows, they determined ſpédily to depart towards the Sea coaſt, where ſome of their company remained, with two ſmall Barks, wherewith they croſt the ſeas. But as they were ready to depart, it came into one of their mindes, that ſome of them whom they had robbed, might peraduenture be ſuch perſons, for whoſe raunſome, they might get more coyne then all their booty was worth: wherefore demaunding of one of the Ladies whō they had bound, what they were, was giuen to vnderſtand, that hee who made the

greateſt reſiſtance was the King, the other two which were liuing, both noble men of his Court. Then calling to his mind, the great hate betweene the ſaid King, and Grifory Duke of Holland, determined if he could, to cary him with him, and to preſent him to the Duke, of whom he hoped to receiue ſome great reward. Wherefore intreating his fellowes, who knew not whō they had robbed, to grant him ſo much fauour, as to permit him to haue that Knight for his priſoner, in regard as knowing him heeretofore in Fraunce, fayning that there he had done great deſpight to a friend of his, in reuenge whereof hee would deliuer him into his hands, whom he knew would keepe him in eternal priſon for his former offence. Nowe if they would be contented to grant this vnto him, hee would ſeeke for no other part of their bootie.

They all being more greedy of pray then of priſoners, who they thought might rather be a charge, then profit vnto them, were content to graunt vnto his requeſt. Who preſently went and vnbound the King, and ſo led him directly towards they⁊ chipping. And hauing winde at will, preſently wayed Anchor, and ſet into the Sea, where wee will leaue them for awhile, and returne to the Queene, who by her ſwift flight, miſt the hands of the thieues, but fell into as great or greater ill. For whilſt the King and the other Lords held the thieues ſomewhat ſhort, by defending themſelues, as is before declared, the fearefull Queene flying into the wood for ſafety, ſtrayed two and fro thee wiſt not whether. At length, being wearied with running, and fainting ſtill with feare, ſhe ſate her downe vnder a Juniper buſh, to refreſh her ſelfe, where after ſhee had awhile reſted her ſelfe, ſhe began to call to mind, and conſider in what great danger ſhe had left her Lord & huſband, then repꝛouing herſelfe, for that ſhe had not rather made choyce to haue ſtayed and ended her dayes with him, then thus to haue romed ſhe wiſt not whether. Then riſing vp, ſhee determined to haue returned to the ſame place where ſhe left them fighting, but ſtrayed further, ſo that tracing and tra-

uerſing

uerſing vp and downe the wood, ſhee ſpent the whole day to her no ſmall griefe. And now darke night hauing ſpred her ſable mantle ouer the face of the earth, the ſorrowfull Quéene, not knowing what to doe, or whether to goe, determined to take vp her lodging for ỹ night, vnder a broade branched Oake, faſt by a fountaines ſide, wheras the wild beaſts of the Foreſt did commonly reſort to drinke, where good Lady ſhee was forced to content herſelfe with a hungry pittance, teares being her daintieſt diſh, whereon ſhée feddе, ſometimes exclayming on cruell fortune, whom ſhée accuſed to haue brought her into theſe miſeries: then preſently her huſbands portrature ſéemed to appeare vnto her minde, whom ſhe thought to be murdred by thoſe robbers, which was ſuch a griefe vnto her, that many times ſhe was minded to haue ſlaine her ſelfe, had not God mightily preſerued her to a further ſetting forth of his glory.

Thus paſt ſhée away moſt part of the night with weeping and lamentations, vntill ſuch time that Somnus with his leaden wings ſeaſed her eye-lids, and cauſed her for a while to ſlumber. In which ſléepe, ſhee thought an Angell ſent from God, being clothed all in white rayment, appeared vnto her, ſaying, Bee of good hart and feare not, for theſe croſſes which now are come vpon thée, the Lord hath ſent to proue thée with all, and therefore it behoueth thée to beare it patiently, vntill ſuch time as the Lord ſhall eaſe thée of them. As for the king thy huſband he liueth, but yet in bands, and ſhall doe ſtill, vntill ſuch time as the childe that now is in thy wombe, ſhall be his deliuerer, whom thou at his birth ſhalt name Euordanus, this nowe am I ſent to tell thee, becauſe thou ſhouldeſt not diſpayre.

The Quéene héereat awaked out of her ſlumber, and looking about if ſhe might ſée any body, but could not, then perceiuing it to be a dreame, or viſion, meruailed what it might ſignifie, ỹ was greatly troubled with deuiſing thereof: ſo that all the night after ſhee could take no reſt, ſometimes thinking of her huſband, and ſometimes what the childes deliuerance might meane, at length determined to

referre

referre all to the mercifull prouidence of God. Thus ſits thée poore ſorrowfull Lady, till ſuch time as by the ſinging of the chéerefull Larke, & by the roaring of the wild beaſts, thée was preparing to forſake Dame Thetis lodging, and that nights ſable mantle was changed into a hoary gray. When loe, as was their wont, the ſauage beaſts came vnto the well to drink, there did ſhee with feare beholde the ſtatelie Unicorne, with the cruell Tiger, & roaring Beare, and gaudy Panther, the bellowing Bull, & foming Boare, the rauening Wolfe, and craftie Fore, with diuers more, which put her in ſuch feare, that ſhe had thought preſently to haue bẽn deuoured, when falling on her knées, and holding vp her hands, ſhe ſaid theſe or ſuch like words.

O moſt mercifull Lord God, I doe here acknowledge before thy diuine maieſtie, my manifolde and innumerable ſins committed againſt thy diuine maiesty both in thought, word, and déed, O Lord I am not worthy ſo much as once to looke vp to heauen, much leſſe to receiue any thing at thy hands O Lord. Yet mercifull Father, truſting in the merits of thy déerely beloued ſonne, our Lord and Sauiour Chriſt Jeſus, I come vnto thée in his name, craning forgiueneſſe of all my ſinnes and iniquities. And further, O Lord God, I humbly beſéech thée to ſaue and deliuer mée, from this preſent danger, and perrill of my wretched life, O Lord bow downe thy heauenly eye, and behold mee thy woefull handmaide, and likewiſe this poore infant that is within my wombe, defend it, O Lord, and grant that according vnto the viſion which thou by thy holy Angell haſt ſhewed mee, it may liue to ſet foorth thy glory and power, and in the end, when it ſhall be thy bleſſed will, to call vs out of this wretched vale of wickednes, thou wilt receiue and place vs in thy Celeſtiall kingdome, whether O Lord for thy ſonnes ſake bring vs I beſéech thée.

Theſe, or ſuch like were the words, which ſhe diſtreſſed Lady then vttered: when behold a mightie furious Lyon came rushing out of the wood towards her, bringing in his mouth a cake of Bread, which he moſt gently layd downe

at

at her feete, fawning vpon her, as if of long time he had bin acquainted with her, and would not depart from her. At length, ſomewhat to recomfort herſelfe, then ſmoothing his rough briſtles with her tender hand, ſhe made much of him laying his head on her lap, wherat he ſéemed to take great content. Then taking vp the cake of bread which hee had brought her, and giuing thanks vnto God, imagining as ſometimes in the wildernes hee had ſent Rauens to feede the Prophet Elias, ſo likewiſe had hee now ſent the Lion to comfort and bring her foode, ſhe refreſhed therwith her hungry ſtomacke. After which repaſt, the Lyon very ſoftly paced towards the wood againe, euer caſting backe his head, as if he loked whether ỳ Lady followed him or not, which ſhée at length perceiuing, determined to follow him, hoping thereby either to get out of the wood, or elſe to finde ſome better place of ſafety. Thus went they together, till at laſt he brought her vnto a Caue vnderneath the ground, with a very narrow entrance in, but being entred, ſhée found it a reaſonable large rome. Thus determining for a while to remaine th[illegible] ſuch time as God ſhould ſend her better fortune, pa[illegible]way the time ſome whiles with walking about the woods néere the Caue, otherwhiles with playing with the Lyon, who euery day brought her in meate, ſuch as he got abrode in the Forreſt, which ſhe ſometimes ſcorched and dryed in the ſunne, otherwhiles was forced to eate it raw, vntill ſuch time as by hap one day walking abroad, ſhe found a flint ſtone, with which afterwards ſhee vſed to ſtrike fire, and therewith would broyle her meate. Thus continued ſhe, vntill ſuch time, that according to the naturall courſe of women, her time of childe-birth was come. When as good Lady, féeling the paines thereof, to her moſt ſtrange and extreame, not hauing any to comfort and help her, ſhe fell againe into her wonted paſſion of dolour, complaining of her cruell fortune, which had depriued her of all helpe and comfort, ỳ had brought her into this extreame ſorrow ỳ paines. But euen then, in the midſt of her complaints, God pittying her griefe, ſent her ſafe deliuerance

of a moſt goodly and beautiful boy, which when ſhe beheld, according to the ſaying of the Scripture, ſhe forgate all her former ſorrow, reioycing that a man child was borne into the world: and giuing thanks vnto God, ſhe toke the child vp in her armes, and beholding it, ſhe imagined that in him ſhe ſaw the liuely figure of the King her huſband. And making ſuch ſhift as ſhee could to wrap him vp in clothes, ſhee beheld on his right ſhoulder a well proportioned croſſe, which ſeemed farre redder then the reſt of his body, whereat ſhee greatly merualled: then calling to minde her viſion, ſhe hoped that in time he ſhould proone a famous man, and a ſcourge vnto the enemies of the Chriſtian faith, as ſhee thought the ſigne of the Croſſe did already foreſhew, then likewiſe remembring the name which the Angell had talde her in her viſion, as ſoone as ſhe had recouered ſtrength to goe, went with her ſonne to the fountaine, where ſhee baptized him, naming him as ſhe was willed, Euordanus, then returned ſhe againe to the Caue, where wee will leaue her for a while with her young Infant, and returne to ſpeake of the King her huſband.

CHAP. II.

How King *Fredericke* being carried away by the Out-lawes, after a great ſtorme at ſea arriued in Holland, whereas he was ſold to his mortall enemie, the Duke *Griffory*.

After the Out-lawes had brought their bootie and good King aboord, and had ſet ſayle, minding to haue gone for ſome place of Fraunce, where they might haue ſecretlie ſtolne aſhore, to learne ſome newes of their owne affayres, and hauing the wind large, determined to haue landed in a ſmall cricke not farre from Rotchell, becauſe moſt of them were heretofore inhabitants of that Towne, but euen as they were come within the ſight of Land, on a ſudden the Skyes began to ouercaſt, the ſunne was clowded, and the face of heauen was ſo darkned, that

one

one could not diſcerne at that preſent time, being about
neone dayes from the darkeſt midnight: the winds began
to blow on all ſides, as if that Eolus had vnſtopped all his
ayrie Caue, and had determined with one aſſault to haue
ſubdued Neptunes Regiments. Or as when the angry
Goddeſſe Iuno grieuing at the quiet paſſage of the poore
vanquiſht Troians, deſired Eolus to ſinke them in the ſea:
ſo fared it with them, by reaſon that the ſeas on all ſides
being ſo aſſaulted of the windes, did ſo cruelly rage and
ſtorme, that ſometimes they ſmall Barks did ſeeme
to touch the very clowdes, and preſently againe were
throwne downe vnto the ſands, euery man imagining that
to be the laſt houre of their liues. Some, as is commonlie
the cuſtome of ſuch people being in extremity, fell to prayer,
otherſome to curſing and ſwearing: the Maiſter cries in
with the ſayles, others cry downe with the Maſt, ſome a-
gaine, to lighten their Barke of her burthen, the more yar-
ly to riſe with the Seas, beginne to throw ouer board all
whatſoeuer comes to hand, hoping thereby, as with a plea-
ſing ſacrifice, to appeaſe the angry Seas.

But euen as they were thus buſied, ſome on one thing,
others on another thing, a mighty guſt in manner of a
Whirlewind, comming out of the South weſt, beares both
maſts and ſayles by the burden. The Barke wherein the
King was, hauing ſpent both their force and maine Maſt,
were forced to put to hull, yeelding themſelues to the pitti-
leſſe mercy of the wind and ſeas, which euery minute was
ready to haue deuoured & ſwallowed them vp. Thus conti-
nued the ſtorme by the ſpace of three dayes, the wind ſome-
times in their forſhipp, then in their poupe, nowe in the
quarter, and preſently againe in their bowe, continuing
with ſuch force, that the beſt man aboord was ſcarcely able
to ſtand on the hatches. But at length, as euery ſtorme
hath an end, ſo now Neptune rouſing himſelfe out of his
fayre Queene Amphitries boſome, and beholding the poore
diſtreſſed Mariners, tooke pitty on their miſeries, and lif-
ting his hoary head aboue the waters, allwaged them, and

with his three-forked Mace rebuked the Windes, threatning to punish their arrogant preſumption, if he hereafter hapned to find them with the like offence.

The ſtorme being thus broken vp, and the Sunne beginning againe to lighten the earth with his ſplendant beames, the weather-beaten Mariners looking abroade for their comfort, eſpied the Land, which after they had a while with ioy beheld, they made to be the Land of Holland. Who then ſo glad as Martinus, for ſo was hee called which had the King to his priſoner, for whom he hoped ere long to receiue ſuch a ſumme of money, as for euer ſhould make him rich: the King on the other ſide was in as great perplexity, knowing that they were arriued on the coaſt of his greateſt enemy, yet comforting himſelfe ſomewhat with the hope of not being knowne, as alſo of not knowing Martinus meaning, he ſhewed himſelfe the more chearefull. Thus betweene hope and feare, they altogether paſſed away the time, in merry diſcourſes of their former danger, till ſuch time as they were come on land, at a Port called Alentmaer, where Martinus fayning himſelfe to be verie ill at eaſe, by reaſon of the late ſtorme, craued leaue of the reſt of his company, to goe with his priſoner vnto the Citty of Hanſtance, which was not paſſing three leagues of, now called Anſterdam: where hee determined to reſt himſelfe, vntill ſuch time as hee found himſelfe throughly amended, which they ſoone graunted him, not knowing his intent, and being alſo willing to be ridde of his company, becauſe of his double charge.

So departed Martinus with his priſoner, whom he ſwore to continue true vnto him: as fearing his eſcape, being to trauell but they two together, and the King being in his enemies country, durſt not make himſelfe knowne, which he muſt needes, if he had made any reſiſtance. Thus trauelling on together towards Hanſtance, they ariued there at ſuch time, as the blushing Sunne plucking in his ſmiling beames, making his ſteedes to mende their wonted place, and plunging downe into the Ocean ſtreames, there in

the

the frothy waues did hide his face, leauing the earth couered with nights darkſome ſhade: wherefore that night they tooke vp their lodging. Martinus learning of his hoſt, how Duke Griffory hauing euer ſince the marriage of the King of Denmarke, and the faire Lady Alliſon of Flaunders, giuen ouer all pleaſure, was withdrawne from his Court into the Country, ſome eight miles diſtance from the Cittie: where hauing built a lodge in a maruilous ſolitarie place, hee paſſed the time in mellancholly humors, ſomewhiles playing on the Lute ſome mournefull ditties, otherwhiles, ingraning in the trees on the ground Verſes and Sonnets, feeding his humors with ſuch vaine toies, to the great griefe of all his ſubiects: and how in all that time he neuer had ſufferd any one to come into his preſence, or to ſpeake with him, ſauing a ſmale company of his attendants, which remained there with him. When Martinus had heard all this, he determined ẏ next day to goe thether, and to make knowne vnto him thoſe things, which ſhould ſoone put him out of his melancholy dumpes. The next morning very early he was riſen vp, and comming to the King, told him how that hee had ſome occaſion of buſines in the Country, which would cauſe him to be away a day or two, wherefore hee was determined in the meane time, leauing him behind him, to cauſe him once more to ſweare vnto him, to remaine vntill his returne, which if hee refuſed, that then he would commit him vnto ſome priſon within the Cittie, whereas hee ſhould bee alwaies ſoothly comming at his pleaſure. The King liſtning attentiuely vnto his ſpeech, was driuen into a thouſand imaginations, not knowing what was beſt for him to doe, at length conſidering his former oath, which rather then he would violate, he would chuſe to indure any death whatſoeuer, ſo much did he eſteeme of his Kingly oath: hee anſwered him thus. I knowe not what your meaning may bee, in this ſort to doubt my former promiſe, and to goe about by a new oath to aſſure your ſelfe of me: if to ſet me to ranſome, I heere freely proffer my ſelfe to goe a long with you into any place,

out of this accurſed region, and there to remaine, vntill ſuch time that the ſame bee payed vnto you, although it ſhould amounte vnto an hundred thouſand pounds, rather then that you ſhould deliuer me, into the hands of the Gouernor of this accurſed Country, who is my mortall enemie.

Nay, nay, replied Martinus, being blinded with couetouſnes, and hoping for a greater ſumme of monie: there is no ſuch matter ment, but I haue not farre off a friend, whoſe councell I minde to followe heerein: in the meane time chuſe whether you will remaine in priſon, or vppon your oath. The King ſeing no remedie, ſware vnto him againe to continue his true priſoner, although it coſt him his life.

Then departed Martinus, towards the Dukes lodge, where being arriued, and deſiring conference with his grace, touching ſuch matters as nearely concerned him, he was at length brought into a garden, in forme much like vnto an endleſſe labyrinth, ſo many were the diuers and ſundry walkes and allies, couered with many kinds of trees, which yeilded ſuch a cloſe ſhadow, that the Sunne with his ſplendant beames could ſcarſe ſhine through: and paſſing thus from one walke into another, he came at length where the Duke ſate in an Arbor of Baies, beeing clothed all in blacke, ſignifying his great ſorrowe which he ſuſtained, and hauing a Lute in his hand, was playing a mornefull dittie, which he euen then had framed, to which Martinus and his guide a while liſtned, vnſeene by reaſon of the thicknes of the Arbor.

At length comming nearer, and with reuerence ſaluting his excellencie, Martinus ſpake as followeth.

Moſt mightie and puiſſant Prince, I cannot but wonder that you who heeretofore, were wont to ſpend your time in moſt honorable exerciſes, as Tilt and Turnie, and following hautie deedes of Chiualrie, ſhould ſo giue your ſelfe ouer vnto this ſolitarie kind of life, neither regarding your owne eſtate, nor the eſtate of your louing ſubiects and Country: which would ſpend their very liues to worke

your

your content. But if I bee not deceaued, this ſtrange humor wherewith you are poſſeſt, proceedeth from contrarie occaſions, the one is the extreame hate you beare vnto the King of Denmarke, the other ouer much loue towards the beautifull Queene his wife, not knowing with your ſelfe what way to be reuenged of him, nor how to regaine her loue. But ſuppoſe moſt mighty Prince, I ſhould worke the meanes of your reuenge, by deliuering him into your hands, would not it content you? yea would you not more reioyce thereof, then to haue gained the greateſt Cittie in Chriſtendome, and likewiſe reward him, that ſhould effect the ſame to his content: ſpeake O worthy Duke, were not theſe the occaſions of thy griefe, and would not this likewiſe be the chiefeſt medicine to eaſe thy ſorrowe.

Scarce were theſe laſt words vttered, when the Duke ſtarting vp, and ſtaring him in the face, as one wakned out of ſound ſléepe, thus replied. Friend, whatſoeuer thou art that ſéekeſt by a fayned and filed tale, to driue me out of my ſad paſſions; knowe that to ieſt with Princes is not tollerable: But if thou canſt performe, that whereof thou haſt made ſhowe of, I will not be ſlacke in rewarding thée for thy paines, though thou ſhouldeſt demaunde halfe my Dukedome. Therefore tell me by what meanes this may be accompliſhed: then effect and bring it to paſſe, and I will reward thée to thy owne content. Worthy Duke replied Martinus, if I performe it not, then let my head bee ſtriken from my ſhoulders, conditionally that if I doe deliuer into thy hands, that vnhappie King, I may haue for my reward the Citty of Hanſtance during my life, with the profits thereof: and this confirme vnto mee before your Nobilitie, and then I will deliuer him into your hands, within this eight daies next comming.

The Duke being filled with ioy, with this his ſo comfortable newes, conſented vnto whatſoeuer he demanded, and calling for a Knight which was néereſt vnto him, willed him to ſommon his Counſell the nert day, to bee attendant to heare a matter of importance, which he would ſhow

vnto

vnto them: which was foorthwith accompliſhed, euery one the next day at their houre appointed, beeing ready in the Counſell chamber, to heare what ſhould be their Princes will: euery one greatly meruailing what ſodein motion, was entred in his head, conſidering that by the ſpace of a yéere before, he had neuer conferred with them of any matter, no nor once ſuffered them to come into his preſence. They being as I haue ſayd gathered together in the Counſell chamber, the Duke leading Martinus by the hand, came vnto them, where he declared his intent, with the promiſe of Martinus: all which was conſented vnto by them, hoping thereby to haue their Prince in his former eſtate of content: Aſſuring vnto Martinus vnder their hands and ſeales, that whatſoeuer the Duke had made promiſe of, they would ſée it performed, ſo ſone as hée ſhould deliuer the King of Denmarke into their hands. Héere will I leaue them to tell of the great griefe, made through all Denmarke, for the loſſe of their King and Quéene.

CHAP. III.

How the King and Queene beeing found miſſing, were ſought for, and how the Lords and Ladies that were with them were found.

THe ſame morning that the King and Quéene went to recreate themſelues in the forreſt, as is before declared, they were not found miſſing, till ſuch time as ỹ tables being ſpred for diner, and many Lords and Ladies, Knights, Squiers, and Gentlemen, being aſſembled together to giue their attendance on his Maieſtie, marualled that hee was ſo long, before he came downe into the great Hall, contrarie to his vſe, which was alwaies wont to be by tenne of the clocke, where he remained vntill dinner time, paſſing away the time with mirth and pleaſant diſports. At length hauing expected his comming vntill twelue of the clocke,

and

and ſéeing that he came not, the Lord Treaſure, whoſe name was Sir Henault, muſing what the cauſe might be, and doubting that all was not well, in regard hee neither came himſelfe, neither any of the Squiers, which were attending nérеſt vnto him were ſéene to come downe, to declare the cauſe, at length went vp vnto the Kings bedchamber, where hee found the Chamberlin with diuers other Gentlemen, which alwaies attended on the Kings owne perſon. And demaunding of them where his Paleſtie was, that he came not downe in the Hall as he was accuſtomed, they all gaue him anſwere, that the King and Quéene, accompanied with the Lord Gwaltero his Cokin, the Lord Bewdall, and the Lord of Menew, with ſome Ladies and attendants, in the morning very early went forth at the Poſterne, towards the Foreſt to take the freſh aire, and that ſince that time they were not returned, neither did they know farther what was become of them, but doubted leaſt that they had ſtrayed ſo farre within the wood, that they had loſt their way forth. When Sir Henault had hard this, he was much amaſed, & greatly troubled in mind, fearing leaſt there had béene ſome treaſon wrought againſt his Paleſtie: wherefore cauſing the reporters of theſe newes, to be in ſure kéeping, he went downe, and declared the ſame to the reſt of the nobillity, and taking counſell together, they determined forthwith to make ageneral ſearch, as well for the King and Quéene, and nobles found wanting, as alſo for all ſuſpected perſons, which might bée thought any waies guilty towards their abſence: likewiſe they determined, to make a generall ſearch throughout all the Foreſt, leaſt peraduenture, they were hapned to goe aſtray, and could not find the ready way backe againe, or if that they were any way diſtreſſed, either by théeues or wild beaſts, that then they might reſcue them, or find what was become of them.

Thus hauing determined, they armed themſelues, to the number of thrée thouſand, Knights and Gentlemen, and being mounted on their horſes, they tooke the way di-

rectly towards the Forrest, where beeing arriued they seperated themselues into diuers companies, seeking vp and downe, and looking almost in euery bush, but could not find them whom they sought for, at length Sir Henault with his companie happning to passe that way, wherein the morning the fight had beene, chaunced first to finde some of the dead bodies, and looking farther, saiwe whereas the Lords and Ladies lay bound, being almost dead with the paine and griefe which they sustained, ỹ Lords by reason of their wounds, and Ladies by the feare wherein they were put: then comming more neere vnto them, they found the Lord Gwaltero, and the Lord of Menew grieuously wounded, the Lord Bewdall with some foure or fiue other Gentlemen slaine out right, which sight strake such a griefe and sorrow into the harts of all the beholders, especially of Sir Henault, that he had much to doe to sit on his horse, yet at length recouering his sences, and causing them to be vnbound, he demaunded what was become of the King and Quéene, and by what misfortune they were brought into this pittifull case.

The Lord Gwaltero hauing his wounds bound vp, and being somewhat refreshed and reuiued with such restoratiues, as some of the companie had brought with them, answered, how that walking to take the aire, and to view those pleasant shades, they were sodenly and vnawares set on by forty theeues or Outlawes, whom by their apparrell and speech, they iudged to be frenchmen, where defending themselues as well as they might, were in the end thus ouercome and wounded: and as for the King, after they had bound vs and were departing away, hauing before stripped vs of the wealth we had about vs, they returned and toke him with them, towards the sea-side. But of the Quéene, we knowe no certainty, for whilst we were fighting she fled into the wood, with the rest of the Ladies, who were all brought back againe saue the Quéene only, by some of the Outlawes who persued them: more I knowe not, but feare least they likewise happned on her, and haue

carried

carried her with them: wherefore he thought it fit that purſute might be made after them to the ſeawards, where if they were not already gone, it might ſo fortune as they might recouer the King and Quéene againe, otherwiſe there would be no hope left for ſéeing them in haſt.

When Sir Henault had heard this diſcourſe made by the Lord Gwaltero, he was ſo grieued inwardly, that with extreame ſorrowe he fell from his horſe in a trance, and being brought againe to himſelfe, ſéeing all things were to be followed according to the occaſion and time, firſt he commaunded, ſome part of his companie to conuaie the Lords and Ladies to the Court, whereas they that were wounded might find helpe for to cure the ſame: and they likewiſe that were ſlaine, might euery one haue buriall according to their eſtates: himſelfe in the meane ſpace being accompanied with a hundred Knights, would followe after the théeues, hoping that if they were not put to ſea before their comming, not only to reſcue the King, but alſo to giue them ſuch a reward as for euer ſhould bee an example, to thoſe who ſhould goe about to attempt the like. With this determination they rode on towards the ſea ſide, whereas they arriued, about the time, when Veſperus, in the weſt had ſet the cunning watch, and ſilent night richly attended by his twinckling traine, ſent ſléepe and ſlumber to poſſeſſe the world, and fantazie for to hazan idle heads, whereas they found their labor fruitleſſe, by reaſon that they were departed long before: and ſéeing the night beginne to wax darke, they all together determined on the plaine, hard by the ſea ſide for that night to reſt themſelues, making fiers and great lights to cauſe the reſt of their companies to come vnto them, who likewiſe had made a long and bootleſſe ſearch in the wood, and at length being almoſt all come together, where Sir Henault remained, they determined the next day to make preperation to follow them by ſea, whom they could not recouer on ſhore.

CHAP. IIII.

Of the generall lamentation that was made throughout all the Kingdome, and how that after a councell held for the gouerning thereof, the Knights and noble men tooke on them the ſearch of the King.

THe next day, no ſoner had darke night taken his leaue, and that the day began to appeare in the Eaſt, but Sir Henault with the reſt of his company, were mounted on horſeback, taking their way towards the ſorrowfull Cittie of Maiance, where being arriued, they found the Citty all full of heauines, by reaſon of the late newes, which at their comming was ſo much the more augmented, being returned without any certaine knowledge what was become of the King and Quéene. There might you haue ſéene the true diſcription of ſorrow, not in one onelie creature, but in generall through the whole Cittie: ſome fell to ſhutting vp their doores and windowes, as minding for very griefe to incloſe themſelues priſoners in their own houſes, ſhunning the day light, which had giuen light to thoſe Robbers, who had diſpoyled them of their ioy and comfort. Others againe clad in blacke mournfull attire, with their chéeks be-ſprd with teares, which like ſtreames trickled downe from the fountaines of their eyes, went vp and downe lamenting and bewailing the loſſe of their ſo louing and gracious Prince. The late coſtly ſhewes, and ſtately Pagants, were turned into ſadde obiects: yea, no noyſe was heard through the whole Cittie, but weéping and lamentation, ſo that the ſorrow ſuſtained by the Troians, for the loſſe of their chiefe Champion Hector, when by the Grécks, at the commaundement of cruell Achilles, he was thrée times dragd about their Cittie walls, being before hand cowardly ſlaine with his accurſed Speare, was not to bee compared with this of Maiance. The graue and modeſt Patrons, were ſéene with their gar-

garments rent, and their haire diſperſed about their ſhoulders, in moſt dolefull manner to repayre to the Temples, where before the moſt Higheſt, they poured forth theyr prayers for their Soueraigne, bathing themſelues with the teares which fell from their eyes. The young damſels pleaſant ſongs, which with cléere and chearfull breſts they were wont to record, were now turned into ſad & mournfull ditties, bewailing the loſſe of their Countries protector. Yea, ſo generall was the griefe vnto all manner of eſtates, that for the ſpace of fortie dayes together, there was neither ſhops opened, nor any wares or merchandiſe ſolde in their markets. So that the towne, which was wont to be ſo filled with all ſorts of people, now ſéemed in a manner to be voyde & deſolate, none, or very few ſéene at any time to walke in the ſtréets. Neither was the griefe in the country any leſſe, yea throughout the whole kingdome: ſo generally was he beloued of all his ſubiects, ỹ hee was counted not onely a iuſt Prince, but alſo a louing Father to his Country, alwaies defending the poore from the oppreſſion of the rich, and the deſolate widdowes and Orphans, from the violence of thoſe, who by any meanes ſought to wrong them.

Sir Henault, as we haue before ſaid, béeing returned to Maiance, cauſed forthwith ſome ſmall Barkes to be well manned and ſent forth after the Pyrats, with commaund not onely to ſcoure their owne Coaſt, but alſo to purſue thẽ vnto the borders of Fraunce: where they tooke many, but could not méet with any of thẽ which they ſought for. Then calling a generall Counſell of all the Nobility and Péeres of the Land, where after a long & learned Oration by him pronounced, deſcribing vnto them, the fickle and dangerous eſtate wherein their Country now ſtoode, by reaſon of this ſudden and vnlooked for alteration of crooked Fortune, with the mutabilitie of the minds of the common people, whoſe natures are alwaies to liſten after noueltie. which things being conſidered, it could not chuſe but to appeare impoſſible, to kéepe the Common-wealth in ſafetie:

without some certaine forme of gouernment to be establi-
shed. Desiring all of them to bend and ioyne their willing
minds together, to deuise some course or meanes for the
same, vntill the King might againe be heard of and reco-
uered. Which hee thought could by no meanes better be
effected, then by a generall search made by a chosen num-
ber of Knights, who should trauell through all the Domi-
nions and kingdoms of Christendome, and else-where, as
by them it should be thought fit and conuenient: of which
number, he himselfe God willing intended to be one, who
would either finde him out, or end his dayes in the search.

This his speech was listned vnto of all, but especiallie
applauded and commended by the Lord Gwaltero, and the
Lord Menew, who as then were indifferently recouered
of their wounds, which they receiued at the losse of their
King: and being both young and valerous, especiallie
Gwaltero, who was then the absolute best Knight in all the
kingdome of Denmarke, hoped by this meanes not onely
to find out their King, if so be he liued, but also to winne to
themselues eternall renowne, by their haughtie deedes of
Chiualrie, which they hoped to obtaine in strange Coun-
tries, where their fortunes should conduct them. But as
for the gouernment of the Common-wealth, in their con-
ceits, they thought none more fit then Sir Henault him-
selfe, who being both sage and discreete, and also being as
we haue said before, Lorde Treasurer, & alwaies in great
fauour with their late King, had in a maner the whole ma-
naging of the affaires of the Kingdome in his owne hands,
by which meanes, as they supposed, he knew how, better
then any other, to continue the same in the former estate,
which would be farre better then to alter the same, by any
other order of gouernment.

This their opinion was held for currant of many, and
consented vnto by most of those that were present, who de-
sired no alteration, but thought their former manner of rule
to be best, and without fault.

But as there is no man so vertuous, but shall haue some
that

that will enuy at his goodnes, eſpecially great and mightie men, who no ſooner grow into the good liking and fauour of the people, be it by neuer ſo iuſt or well deſerued occaſion, (yea though by him onely the Common-wealth hath bẽ in a manner preſerued and defended from the inuaſiue power of their enemies, (yet ſhall you haue ſome, like dogges in a manger, that will neither do good themſelues, nor willingly heare of others well doings,) beeing prickt forwards with enuy, will not ſtick to turne any his good deſeruings into euill, and all their counſels, be they neuer ſo profitable to the Common-wealth, they will goe about to perſwade, that it is rather to benefit & rayſe themſelues, then to doe good to their Countries: yea farther, let them accompliſh any notable peece of ſeruice for their country, they will not be afraide to whiſper into mens eares, that it was done but for vaine glory.) Euen ſuch there were in this Counſell, who not onely for enuie, diſliked the choyſe which the Lord Gualtero and the reſt had made, but alſo diſliked of the ſearch which Sir Henault had motioned for the ſeeking of the King, alleaging that by making ſuch a queſt, they ſhould not onely diſpoyle themſelues of their chiefe Captaines and leaders, but alſo leaue their Country naked, and ready for euery inuaſion of the enemy, when it would be too late to call home thoſe for their defence whom they ſhould not know where to find. Some againe thought it better to ſend forth Embaſſadors into diuers Nations, thereby hoping to gaine knowledge, what was become of him: thinking that if the Out-lawes had kept him aliue, that then they had ſold him to ſome Prince, who would be content to put him to raunſome. Others held, that to ſend forth ſpyes, which by diligent inquirie might heare of him, would be the beſt courſe. Thus diuers men were of diuers minds, ſitting a long while in counſell to no end, neither determining any order for the gouernment of the Common-wealth, nor meanes to find out their King and Quéene. But at length, by the meanes of the Archbiſhop of *Maiance*, who deſired change and alteration,

they

they grew to determine of their gouernment, which should be in this maner following.

First, they should chuse of the most sufficient of the Nobilitie, and Laitie of the Realme, the number of fyre-score, out of which number by lot they should chuse tenne, and of the Clergie thirtie, out of which nũber likewise they should chuse two by lot, so that of the Nobility there should be alwaies tenne, and of the Clergie two, which twelue so elected, should haue the gouernment of the whole kingdom for a yeare, and at the yeares end, to giue vp an account vnto the other fyre-score and eighteene, of the imployment of the treasure belonging to the Crowne: and then other twelue to be chosen in the same manner, for the next yere. And this order and manner of gouernment to be kept inuiolate, vntill such time as they should heare some certaine newes, either of the Kings death, or returne. To this they all consented, setting thereto their hands & seales, presently making choyse of those whose happe should be first to gouerne this their new deuised state. The Lots beeing cast, the first twelue to whom the gouernment lighted, was of the Clergie, the Archbishop of Maiance, and the Bishop of Odelstoe: and of the Nobilitie, the Duke of Louenborge, the Duke of Newmilter, ỳ Lord Harding, the Count Hermes, the Countie of Mildorpe, the County of Opencade, the Lord of Londen, the Lord Itzenho, the Lorde of Newstar, and the Lord of Rensborge. These twelue, according to former agreement, toke on them the gouernment of the kingdome, first setting all things in quiet within the kingdome, and making diuers lawes and statutes for the preseruation thereof. And then made preparation for the defending of the same, if so be ỳ any neighbor Prince should now in the alteration of their gouernment, make any war or inuasion vppon them, thereby not to be taken vnprouided. They therefore fortified diuers Castles, and strong Holds vppon the borders of the Kingdome, repairing those that were weake, and erecting new where they thought any neede to be, placing garrisons in them all, for ỳ defence

there-

thereof. Likewise they toke order, for the defence and sure keeping of the Country of Flaunders in their subiection, fearing least vppon the report of the losse of the King and Quæne, there might be some alteration moued, either by some neighbour Potentats, or the inhabitants themselues, who at that time were giuen altogether, to desire change and alteration.

Now amongst all these discourses wee must not forget the Lord Gualtero, the Lord Meneu, and Sir Henault, whose heroicke mindes not being able to bee contained within the confines of Denmarke, missing their onely comfort and solace, their noble Prince, whose presence was more deere to them, then any thing in the world besides: prouided according to their former determinations, to trauell in his quest throughout the whole world, but that they would either find him out, or heare some certaine newes of him, which being made knowne, to diuers other Lords and Knights, there were to the number of a hundred, all of the minde, best either to find him out, or neuer to returne. Thus euery one in the best manner they could, made preparation for their iourney, furnishing themselues both with armes, and store of money for their needfull expences in their trauell. And being all in a readines to depart, they deuided themselues, some into one Country, and some into another, appointing where many times to meete, being in strange Countries, where wee will leaue them, to declare what befell the King and Marques, being in his enemies Country, as is before mentioned.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

How King *Fredericke*, was deliuered by *Martinus*, into the the hands of *Griffory*, by whom hee was imprisoned, and how *Martinus* by the Duke was afterward put to death.

YOu haue heard before, how *Martinus* had agreed with Griffory of Holland, for the deliuery of the good King Fredericke, in recompence whereof, he should haue for tearme of his life, the Cittie of Hanstance, withall the customes and profits thereof.

The next day after this conclusion, the Duke going along with him to Hanstance, where being arriued, was by *Martinus* brought into the Burgesses house, where he left the King, who according to his oath he found there still remaining, little fearing that which suddenly happned vnto him, for *Martinus* comming vnto him, and taking him by the hand, as if her would haue conferred with him about his raunsome, brought him at length into a chamber, whereas he had left the Duke, accompanied with some few of his nobilitie, vnto whom *Martinus* spake as followeth.

Most high and mighty Prince, according vnto my faithfull promise made vnto your excellencie, I here before these your nobillity, deliuer vp into your hands, this vnfortunate and vnhappie King of Denmarke, of whom you may now at any time, be fully and sufficiently reuenged, of any former wrong by him committed against you, or of any displeasure, which worthily you haue conceaued against him, and likewise so clip his wings, for euer hereafter being able, to doe you the least offence whatsoeuer.

When the Duke had heard him speake this his pleasing, and to him most delightfull speech, scarce suffring him to make his conclusion, hauing also in the meane time throughly viewed the King, whom by diuers signes he verily knew to be the same, he could scarce content himselfe, but

but would immedially haue slaine him with his owne hands, so deadly was the hate he bare him, and such the incivillitie of his churlish and reuengfull nature: yet being stopped by some of his nobilitie from killing him, hee fell out into these or such like raylingspeeches. O thou most accursed and vild caitiff, whom were it not (that I meane to put thée to more extreame paine & torments,) I would with these my hands, rent that detestable body of thine to peeces, and with my teeth teare and gnaw the flesh from thy bones, so endlesse is my malice against thée, and so many thy wrongs and villanies committed, which causeth me to muse and inuent, what or how many kind of torments, I might inflict vpon thée. But would to God that disloyall strumpet, that infernall Quéene, the causer of all my miseries, yea she whose bewitching beauty, thou so much and with such a greedinesse hast desired, yea and by thy coniurations, and other thy detestable and execrable meanes, thou hast heeherunto to thy content inioyed: O that she were héere present, to behold and take part of those continuall paines and torments, the which not only for the hate I beare thée, but also to bee reuenged on her, for her most odious, whorish, and execrable dissimulation towards me, I meane to inflict vppon thy wretched carkas.

The good King being no longer able to forbeare, these inhumane and opprobrious reuilings, proffred him by his churlish and spightfull enemie, replied in this sort: Griffory I cannot but muse, how God hauing indued thée, with reason and vnderstanding like vnto other men, that thou notwithstanding, shouldest abound in vicious, wicked, and detestable conditions aboue all other men, which canst not be content with the miserie, which thou seest me brought into, being thy prisoner, and at thy disposition, to be either kept or ransomed, wrought by the most base & odious meanes that might be, yea after such a sort, that the veriest Infidell vnder the heauens, would not so much as once haue gone about or imagined, but also now (contrarie) to all humanitie, reuilest me with such opprobrious

speeches, whom heeretofore thou durst not to looke me in the face for feare, and also reuile at her, whom neither thy selfe, nor no man liuing is able to touch with ẏ least crime whatsoeuer, and that would I make good against thée, and thrée of the best of thy Knights with my body, were I at libertie, hauing horse and armor. Tis true, tis true, replied the Duke, we knowe your vallor to be great, but we will soone abate that your hote courage, and place you where your Goddesse whom you so much estéeme, shall neither haue power, nor meanes to helpe you.

Doe thy worst replied the King, and sith it is the will of God to inflict this punishment vpon me, I will indeuor my selfe with patience, to indure what torments soeuer shall happen, hoping in the world to come, to inioy therefore eternall blessednesse: but in ẏ meane time thinke not thou, but that thou maist fall in like mishap, and that I haue yet remaining in the Kingdome of Denmarke such Subiects, that when they shall knowe of this my ill fortune and thy crueltie, will not leaue bearing Armes, till such time they shal haue layd wast, this thy accursed Country, not leauing thée any Towne, or Fort to hide thy selfe, from their reuengefull swords: wherefore aduise thee, and determine either to set me at libertie, or otherwise expect those euils, which will surely fall on thy Country. If thou consent to my inlargement, for my ransome thou shalt receaue a whole million of gold, which shall bee payed thée foorthwith out of my treasurie.

No, no, replied Griffory, thy gold is but drosse, and cannot worke in me that content, which my hart shall inioy by thy imprisonment, neither doe I feare thy power which thou so much vauntest of, for thou shalt see, and that shortly, that I will not onely possesse my selfe of thy darlings County of Flaunders, but also by the strength of this right arme, in despight of all thy power, Crowne my selfe King of the Kingdome of Danske, whilst thou in the meane time, shalt lie rotting thy bones in my prison. Thē turning about to a Knight of his, named Sir Ragdand, hee willed

him

him to conuay the vnhappie King prisoner vnto his Castle of Coruew, and there to put him into the dungion of the sayd Castle, and to alowe him euery day, for the continuance of his most wretched life, a quart of water, and a pound of bread, made of the courssest wanne, thinking this, that continually pining away by reason of his courste faire, would be a farre greater paine and torment vnto him, then any present death whatsoeuer. Likewise for the more sure keeping of him, her ordained a gard of fifty Knights, alwaies to bee within the Castle, who should see that no Knight should enter therein. This Castle of Coruew, was of meruailous strength inuironed about with deepe ditches, and mighty heigh walls, and had but only one way in, which was ouer a drawe bridge, the which was alwaies defended by ten of the sayd fifty Knights, fiue at ỹ one end, and fiue at the other, this gard grew at length to a custome, by reason of the hundred Knights of Denmarke, which went in search of their King, and was deuised only to intrap and imprison them, as you may reade towards the latter end of this booke. Here now will we leaue the woful King inclosed in a miserable prison, bewailing his crosse fortune, where hee passed away many a yeare, & although his fare was as we haue sayd before both course and short, yet did God so bleese him, that he continued alwaies healthy and stronge of body, neuer grieued with any kind of sickines, sauing onely discontentednesse of minde, which with patience he much delayed, & returne we to speake of Martinus, (who had not long after the imprisonment of the King, quietly inioyed the cittie of Hanslance, withall the profits thereof before granted him, to the extreame griefe of the chiefest of the Cittie, who disdained much to bee in subiection to so base a person,) for the Duke, some eight dales after possession deliuered, fell in consideration with himselfe, of the great benefit which hee had lost, by giuing away the chiefe Citty in his Dukedome, deuised which way he might with his honor recouer the same againe: at length hauing resolued with himselfe, he brought it thus to

paſſe.

One day being with diuers of his Nobility, and Martinus being in company, the Duke fained himſelfe to be very merry, and in his mirth, for his further content, deſired Martinus to declare, how hee hapned to take Frederick priſoner. Martinus not diſtruſting any thing, began to make a large repetition, beginning with his former life in France, then the cauſe and manner of his baniſhment, and their arriuing in Denmarke, with their robbery and murder, committed in the Forreſt of Maiance, with their cruell ſtorme ſuſtained at Sea, as is before declared, by which they were put on that Coaſt, and laſtly, the proffer of a hundred thouſand pound by the King, which hee refuſed, onely to pleaſure the Duke. All which when Griffory had attentiuelie liſtned vnto, hee ſuddenly ſtart vp from the place where hee ſate, commaunding the Standers by to lay hands on Martinus, ſaying that it was not lawfull to ſuffer ſuch a one, who had ſo many waies deſerued death, as by his owne confeſſion did appeare, neither to liue, nor to be accepted into the ſocietie of men: wherefore he willed the forth with to leade him to the place of execution. Which when Martinus perceiued, and ſaw that the Tyrant was fully minded to execute, whatſoeuer he had ſaid, hee fell downe on his knees, deſiring mercy, and offering for the ſafegard of his life, to redeliuer his right of the Citty of Hanſlance. But hee who neuer was acquainted with mercy or compaſſion, doubting if he ſhould pardon him his life, the whole world would condemne him of iniuſtice: and ſeing he might as well by his death as his life inioy his will, anſwered, that by the Law hee had deſerued to die, and hee being appointed by God, to be a miniſter of iuſtice, could do no leſſe then cauſe the lawes to be executed: wherefore for an example to all others, who for the deſire of this worldly gaine, are content to betray the innocent, hee was ledde to the market place, and had his head ſmitten of. Now will we returne to ſpeak of the Quéene and her yonng ſonne, whom wee left in the Forreſt, beeing accompanied with brute beaſts.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Howe the Queene going into the Forreſt, loſt her young ſonne, for whom ſhee made great lamentation, and how he was found, and carried away by the Duke of Saxony.

YOu remember, how the Queene and her little ſonne, being ſtill in the Caue, were nouriſhed by ſuch meate as the Lyon vſed to bring them: and many times for her recreation, would goe walke amongſt the trées nére adioyning to their Caue. Thus continued ſhée by the ſpace of one whole yére, neuer ſéeing other company then the wilde beaſts: although there were diuers ſearches made through the Forreſt, as well by the Knights that were in the queſt of her and the King, as alſo by others for diuers occaſions. It hapned one day that the Lion hauing brought in a young Kidde, which hée had taken, the Queene went forth to breake ſome wood to roſt the ſame withall: and taking her young ſonne with her, who by this time was able a little to goe and craule, and ſetting him downe in the ſunne whilſt ſhe went vp and downe, to breake rotten bowes and ſticks for the vſe aforeſaid, thinking her childe would continue quiet enough, playing with ſuch toyes as ſhe had left him, went ſomewhat farre from the place. Hée in the meane time, either being wearie of his ſport, or diſliking the place where he was, or more likely by the ſpeciall will of God, who pitying his and others miſhaps, had other wiſe determined of his bringing vp, cauſed him to goe from place to place: ſo that by the time his mother had prouided her wood, and was come to the place ſhée left him in, he was gone aſtray cleane out of hearing. Which when ſhe beheld, and had awhile called and ſought after him, not knowing what was become of him, a thouſand imaginations came into her mind: ſometimes thinking ſome wilde beaſts had deuoured him, then imagining againe, that the Lyon ſéeing him in that place by himſelfe, had

had carried him to the Caue, as oftentimes hee would be playing with him, and beare him from place to place: and beeing a little comforted with this hope, shee hasted her to the Caue, where likewise shee was deceiued of her hope, which put her into such griefe, that not beeing able to containe herselfe on her feete, shee fell into a traunce. Where wee will leaue her awhile, and declare what became of the child. You shall vnderstand, that the very same day, Mauris Duke of Saxony passing ye Seas from England towards his owne Country, was driuen by force of weather vppon this Coast, where beeing safely arriued, with a few shyps of his Nauie, the rest beeing disperst with the stoame, and beeing weary of the Sea, determined with some twentie or thirtie Knights, and Gentlemen in his companie, to take some recreation and pastime in the Forrest, which was hard adioyning vnto ye sea side where his ships then rode, as is declared in the first chapter of this Booke. So taking their horses and Armour, for feare of any danger which might happen, they altogether set foorth into the Forrest, whereas they had not long rode, before such time as a meruailous great Stagge appeared vnto them, which when Duke Mauris beheld, with his Launce in his hand, hee set spurres to his horse, willing the rest of his company to follow him, hoping by the swiftnes of his horse to haue slaine the Stagge: which hee pursued so farre, that at length hee had lost the sight of all his company, and was entred so far in the Forrest, that hee knew not well which way to returne againe, so thicke were the trees and bushes; and so many the small trodden paths which ledde two and fro, made by the wilde beasts.

Thus roming to and fro, fearing to loose himselfe, and hoping to finde his companie, at length hee passed by the place, where as the young child had gotten himselfe by his crauling, whilst his Mother was gathering sticks (euen about the time that she good Lady was returned to the Caue to seeke for him) which when Duke Mauris beheld, hee alighted downe from his horse, and seeing it to be so fayre

and

and no bodie knew it, hee mused from whence it should come, or by what meanes it might be brought into a place, so desert and voyd of humane companie: then taking the childe vp in his armes, and earnestly beholding it, hee thought that it did very much resemble his young sonne Iago, who was then about the age of 18 or 20 monthes old, wherefore after hee had a while called to see, whether any body would come to seeke for the child, and sawe that none came, he mounted againe on horse backe, taking the childe with him, determining to haue him nourished & brought vp with his sonne, because they did so much resemble and were so neere of age, imagining that it might bee some Gentlemans, or Nobles mans childe, that by some great misfortune was brought into this extremitie, thus sometimes musing of one matter, and so of another, he rod onwards he knew not well whether, but by chance he hapned on a small beaten way, which brought him out of the Forrest, almost at the same place where he entred, where hee found all his companie in a great feare, and doubt what was become of him, minding to haue returned againe into the Forrest to seeke for him. But when they sawe him comming, they were all filled with great ioy, & went to meete him, to whom he recounted all his aduenture, and of the finding of the childe, which when they had heard, and beheld him, they much admired as well his strange finding, as also the rarenesse of his beautie, then which they imagined neuer to haue seene any more accomplished: some imagining this, some that, and all they knew not what, this past they away the time vntill they were come, where their shippes ancored, and going aboord the next day, hauing the wind faire, and the seas indifferently calme, they set saile in so happie a houre, that within foure daies after they arriued in the Dutchie of Saxonie, at a port called Leton, from whence they rode towards the Cittie of Brensweke, where then the Dutches was remaining, of whom and the whole Cittie, the Duke was most louingly receaued, and welcomed home, who presently after his comming

to the Pallace, he demaunded for his young sonne, who being brought before him, he caused likewise the childe which he found in the Forrest to be brought also, who being both together, a man might very hardly knowe the one from the other, but that the Saxon Prince, was something the bigger, as being elder by sixe monthes, and had also as then somewhat the better cullor, being norished with more wholsomer diet. After they had a while beheld and played with the children, the Duke declared vnto the Dutches, and rest of the Lords and Ladies there present, the manner of his finding, as before is recited, and likewise willed to haue him brought vp, as acompanion with his sonne, desiring the Dutches to bee as carefull of him, as of her owne, assuring her that his minde gaue him, how that the childe was issued of a Noble bloode: & because they knewe not by what name to call him, the Duke willed him to bee called the Gentleman of the Forrest, which name we must vse vntill such time, as fortune shall make knowne, from whence he is proceeded. Heere againe will wee leaue him, and returne to speake of the Queene his mother, whom we left in a traunce in the Caue, where hauing line a long while, and at length come vnto herselfe againe, and remembring the losse of her childe, fell to weeping, and renting, and tearing her face with her nailes, pulling her haire from her head, and cursing herselfe which had taken no better care of him: then comming foorth of the Caue, she went crying vp and downe, causing the woods to resound the eccho of her son, seeking whether shee could in any place perceaue, either by bloud or other signe, if he were deuoured of the wild beasts, and finding none, she fell againe to seeke in euery bush, if happily hee might be crept therein, but all in vaine bestowed she her paines good Lady, to seeke for him which in that place could not bee found, for God had otherwise ordained, for the bringing vp of the child, as you haue already heard, though vnknowne to the good Ladie his mother, who was now in such extreame griefe, not finding nor knowing what was become of her childe, that

she

ſhe became as frantick, weeping, & crying, vp and downe the Forreſt all that day, and moſt part of the night, till being forced with wearineſſe ſhe ſat downe, and reſted herſelfe. Where ſitting a while, and contemplating her ſorrowes, one whiles there would come into her minde, the remembrance of her husband, and her former eſtate, being in ioy and proſperitie, the calling to minde whereof, did ſtrike into her the greater ſorrowe: for being in miſerie, there is no greater griefe, then to call to minde forepaſſed pleaſures: then againe, would come into her minde her viſion, which ſhe ſawe in the Forreſt, and the hope of future ioyes, which thereby was promiſed, which did ſomewhat againe mittigate her ſorrowe, thus paſſed ſhee away all that night, in weeping and lamentations, neither caring nor thinking what might become of her, ſo exceſſiue was her griefe.

CHAP. VII.

How the Queene the next day got out of the Forreſt, and how ſhe placed herſelfe in a Moneſtrie, neere to the Citty of Maiance.

THe night being paſt, and beautifull Aurora comming againe to the viewe of this nether worlde, whoſe welcome the chearefull Birds rang forth, with many a pleaſant tune, to the comfort of all earthly creatures: the woefull Lady, who of all the night had not once ſuffred her eyelids to cloſe, nor giuen nature her due by ſleepe, riſing vp from the place where ſhe had remained all night, began againe to renew her former ſorrow, ſometimes curſing & raging at her euill fortune, then againe blaming herſelfe for her impatience, which was not able to indure thoſe croſſes which God for her tryall had layd vpon her.

Thus at length ſomewhat comforted with the hope ſhee had, that the prouidence of the moſt Higheſt, might turne

all her afflictions and croſſes, into ioyes and bleſſings: and likewiſe that in time, ſhe might recouer, according to the Viſion which ſhe had ſeene at her firſt comming into ỹ foreſt, both her huſband and ſonne, ſhee determined to make triall if ſhe might get forth of the Foreſt, which if ſhe could, ſhe would vnknowne trauell vnto ſome Monaſtary, or religious houſe, where ſhee meaned to ſpend ỹ reſt of her time to her ſoules comfort: but firſt ſhe determined to make triall if her huſband were returned or not. So hapning on a by path, onwards ſhe went ſo farre, that by the time that Phœbus golden Chariot was aſcended into the midle heauens, ſhee found herſelfe euen at the place, where firſt in company of the King, and theyr traine of Lords & Ladies; ſhee entred the wood, at ſuch time as they were ſet on by the Out lawes. Where beholding the place, and calling to minde that there beganne the head and well ſpring of all her troubles, and miſeries which ſhee had ſince that time indured, braſt forth into theſe, or ſuch like ſpeeches.

O thou accurſed place, reſerued onely of the diuine powers to be a plague and hell to thoſe, who willingly not ſo much as in thought offended againſt them. I beſeech the Almightie protector of heauen and earth, that thou mayeſt for euer more proue barren and vnfruitfull, and that theſe thy goodly trées and bulhes, which were a couert vnto thoſe damned wretches, which ſeperated me from that perleſſe Prince and my déere loue, may hereafter neuer beare neither fruite nor leaues, but may preſently wither away and die: as did that figge trée which thou, O Sauiour Chriſt, diddeſt curſe for not yéelding of fruite in ỹ time of thy hunger, going frõ Bethania to Ieruſalem. Thus accurſing that place, and the whole Foreſt, ſhee directed her courſe towards Maiance, where by reaſon of her long abſence, and the altering of her apparrell, through time & her beſt skill, ſhée entred vnknowne of any, where ſhee found ſuch an alteration, that ſhe could ſcarcely beleiue that to be the Citty, which in former time ſhée had ſéene ſo much to floriſh, in coſtly and braue ſhewes: and not knowing well what to

imagin,

imagin, ſhée ſecretlie inquired as well the cauſe of this ſtrange alteration, as alſo whether there were any certain newes of the King being alive or dead. All which at large was declared vnto her, as well the cauſe of ſorrow, which generally did appeare through all the Cittie, for the loſſe of the King, as alſo the new gouernment of the ſtate, which was diſliked of many: but whether the King were liuing or no, that was not knowne, ſo ſecretly did that Tyrant Griffory cauſe his impriſonment to be conceald.

But at length, hauing made what inquirie ſhe could, not minding to make her ſelfe knowne, ſhe returned againe out of the Citty, and went vnto a Monaſtary ſome three miles diſtant, called the Monaſtry of our Lady, where comming to the Gouernelle, ſhe intreated to be entertained amongſt the Religious Votaries. Affirming herſelfe to be a poore deſolate widdow, who being by death diſpoyled of all cõfort had determined to end the remnant of her life in prayer, and thankſgiuing vnto her Creator, truſting thereby to find comfort for her ſoule in the world to come. The Abbeſſe being a very deuout and religious woman, marking not onely her outward geſture, which was a plaine demonſtration of inward griefe, but alſo conſidering her rare beutie, which though it were not ſet forth by any Art or abilliments, yet in that careleſſe and couert ſort, did it appeare to be moſt ſinguler, demaunded of her many queſtions, which ſhe anſwered in ſuch good and modeſt ſort, that ſhée grew thereby in great liking, and good opinion of her, entertaining her amongſt the reſt of her Siſters, where ſhee behaued herſelfe in ſuch good ſort, that in ſhort time ſhe gained to herſelfe, not onely the loue of all the houſe, but alſo the fame of her godly liuing, was ſpredde abroade through all the country adioyning, to the great commendation, and famouſing of the Monaſtry. Where wee will leaue her in her godly meditations, and returne a little to declare what hapned to the Lord Gwaltero, and Sir Henaulr, with the reſt of their company, that toke on them the ſearch of their King.

CHAP. VIII.

How the Lord *Gwaltero*, the Lord of *Menew*, and Sir *Henault*, with diuers others, were deuided by a ſtrange aduenture: and what hapned vnto the Lord *Gwaltero* thereby.

IT is to be remembred before, how the Lord Gwaltero, the Lord of Menew, and Sir Henault, with diuers others, taking on them the ſearch of their King, began their iourney from Maiance, reſoluing not to returne without ſome certaine newes of him who they ſought for: thus trauailing on together through moſt part of Denmark, they hapned at length cõming into a Forreſt, to meet a Squire on horſe back, making all the ſpeede that poſſibly he might: euer looking backwards, as if ſome body had purſued him. At length, meeting with the Lord Gwaltero, and the reſt of the company, who were in all to the number of twelue Knights, beſides their Squires, and thinking by the coſtly Armor which he ware, him to be the chiefeſt in the companie, alighted from his horſe, and falling on his knees, with the teares ſtanding in his eyes, ſpake as followeth.

Moſt curteous Knight, for ſo much my minde aſſureth you to be, I humbly beſeech you, and the reſt of your company here preſent, for the honour of knight-hood, and the loue that you ought to beare to all diſtreſſed Ladies and Damſels, that you will doe ſo much as ſuccour and reuenge a moſt beautifull Lady, who euen now in this Forreſt being trauailing to a brothers houſe of hers, ſome 3. leagues diſtance from her owne, being accompanied with her husband, my Lord and Maiſter, and ſome foure or fiue attendants more, whom I feare mee by this time are all neere hand ſlaine, or grieuouſly wounded, by a ranck Traytor, who hauing long time ſued vnto my Lady for laſciuious loue, and not being able to maintaine the ſame, by reaſon of her chaſt and honeſt denials: this morning, knowing

that

that ſhe was to paſſe this way, accompanied himſelfe with ſome tenne or twelue, as wickedly diſpoſed as himſelfe, whom hee had made acquainted with his villainous pretence, vnawares ſet vppon vs, & at the firſt incounter grieuouſly wounded my Lord, by reaſon he was vnarmed, hauing nothing but his ſword to defend himſelfe, as not douting any ſuch euill.

Thus concluding his tale with whole flods of teares, which iſſued from his ſorrowfull eyes, which moued pitty in all the beholders, eſpecially in the Lord Gwaltero, who not long before had talked the like miſhap: willing ỳ ſquire to ſtand vp, and comfort himſelfe, aſſuring him, that he had met with thoſe, who would reuenge the wrong which hee had declared vnto them. Wherefore willing him to ſhewe which way he ſhould take, he ſet ſpurres to his horſe, and galloped as faſt as hee could, hoping to come ſone enough to their ſuccour: which when the reſt of his companie beheld, they followed after as faſt as they could, but had not rodden long before they had loſt ſight of him, by reaſon of the thickneſſe of the wood, and the ſwiftnes of his horſe, which was accounted to be the beſt in all the Kingdome. Thus galloping onwards, at length he came where ỳ way deuided it ſelfe into three ſeuerall paths, and taking that on the right hand, as thinking it to be the right way, hee rode on ſtill, neuer loking backe for his cõpany, ſo earneſt was his mind, ſet on the reſcue of the Lady and her huſband. The reſt comming after, when they came vnto the place where the way deuided it ſelfe, knew not well what to doe, nor which way to take, yet at length, being directed by the Squire, the moſt of them, as Sir Henault, and the Lord of Menew, toke that way which ledde directly forth between the other two, appointing ſome to take the other wayes, to follow the Lord Gwaltero, if peraduenture he had miſſed in his way. Amongſt which his Squire, & two other Knights, the one named Sir Brewes, the other Sir Cadrus, toke the way which he before had roden.

The Lorde Gwaltero, as wee haue ſaid before, being

pric-

pricked on with a deſire to reſcue thoſe which were diſtreſſed, made ſuch haſt, that after he had paſſed the place where the wayes deuided it ſelfe, and hauing ridden about two miles from the place, met with a peaſant driuing of cattell before him, of whom he inquired, whether he had ſéene any company thereabouts fighting: or any Knights or gentlemen ſlaine? The peaſant made aunſwere he ſaw no ſuch, but ſome halfe a mile before, he met foure Knights croſſing the way towards a little Caſtle, ſome two leagues of, leading a very faire Lady pittifully weeping, whō he thought they conſtrained to goe onwards againſt her will. When Gwaltero had heard this, he aſſured himſelfe that this was the ſame Lady whom he went to reſcue, wherefore demanding which way they went, the peaſant ſhewed him where they were riding vp a little hill, almoſt a mile before him, which when he beheld, he ſpurred on faſter then before hée had done, ſo that before they were attained vnto the ſight of their Caſtle, he had ouertaken them in a fayre meddow, betweene two ſmall hills. And calling to them, ſayd, Traytors turne, and deliuer me that Lady, whom ſo villainouſly you haue carried away, or your liues ſhall pay my ſworde her raunſome.

They hearing him call, and loking backe, ſéeing but one Knight alone perſuing them, ſtayed, and he who ledde the Ladies horſe by the raines, being a very bigge and comly Knight, anſwered: foliſh and moſt ſimple Knight, thinkeſt thou me ſo fond or faint harted, that only at thy threats, who art able to performe nothing but in words, I will deliuer this my prize whom I haue gotten ſo hardly, and with the price of much bloud, or that my loue towards her is ſo ſmall, ſo lightly to part from her. No, no, I counſell thée rather for thy owne ſafegard to depart away, or elſe this my Launce ſhall make your paſſe port to old Caron. Gwaltero hearing this, and being no longer able to indure thoſe braues, placed his Launce in his reſt, and ſetting ſpurres to his horſe, they ranne together like lightning, and at the encounter their ſpeares flew into ẏ aire, Gwal-

tero

tero passing on without any hurt at all, but the other Knight whose name was Brandoll, being wounded a little in the left side, was so sore astonied with the stroke, that he could hardly containe himselfe, from falling from his horse: which Gwaltero perceauing, his carreare ended, returned againe with his sword in his hand, then meeting the one the other, there beganne a fierce and doubtfull combat, which had foorthwith ended by a stroke that the Lord Gwaltero gaue him on the right shoulder, which was so mighty, that breaking his pouldron, wounded him shrewdly in the shoulder, and sliding downe farther, cut him into the thigh, with paine whereof hee fell from his horse: which when the rest of his companie beheld, all at once they assailed him, charging him so roughly, that hee was likely to haue gone besides his Saddle, had he not taken hold on the horse maine with his hands, but they had no great cause long to boast thereof, for gathering all his forces together, and raysing himselfe in his stirrup, hee tooke one of them so sound a blow on the Helme, that the steele not able to keepe out the stroke, claue his head to the teeth, to the great discomfort of the rest. Who seeing one of their companie slaine, and their Captaine lying on the ground, in little better sort, determined either to bee reuenged, or else to followe them in the like misfortune: raging & chafing, ẏ one only Knight should be able to make resistãce against them: assaulted him more fiercely then they had done before. One of them whose Launce remained whole, determined to charge him on the backe, and comming behind him with his full carreare, at such a time as he was raising himselfe in his stirrups, to haue striken one that was before him, gaue him such a cruell stroke, that caused him tumble headlong ouer his horse necke, and had not his Armor beene exceeding good, that blowe had made an end of the combat: but hee who was reserued for other purposes, feeling himselfe so cowardly striken, quickly recouered his feete, and defended himselfe valiently, though with more disaduantage then before, whereby he receaued

many woundes, and was likely to haue bene ouercome, for by this time Brandoll had againe recouered his ſcences, and ſeing the Knight who had brought him into that caſe, to continue ſtill fighting againſt his Knights, and had already ſlaine one of them, being preſſed forwards, both with ſhame and griefe, taking his ſword in his hand, he ranne vpon him like a fierce vnskilfull mastiue, who being once toſſed by the ſturdie bull, commeth on more haſtily then before: but Gwaltero perceauing him comming, ſeeming to meete him lightly, made a thruſt at one of the Knights horſes, which charged him on horſe backe, which thruſt lighted ſo luckily, that ſo piercing his belly, hee cauſed him with his Paſſer to tumble to the ground, where by reaſon of one of his feete being in the ſtirrup, he could not ſo ſuddenly riſe againe, by which meanes Gwaltero the more eaſier delt with Brandoll, and the other Knight, who ſeing his fellowes miſchance, diſmounted himſelfe for feare of the like miſhap: now grew the foote combat more hote and fierce then that on horſe backe, by reaſon that Gwaltero perceauing himſelfe almoſt wearied, and fearing the comming of the other Knight, whoſe foote was in the ſtirrup vnder his horſe, layd on luſtily at his might, but Brandoll being a ſtrong Knight as moſt in that Country, ſeemed to ſet light by his furie, and charged him againe with ſo many mighty bloines, as well hee gaue him to vnderſtand, that he knew better how to fight on foote, then on horſe backe.

The good Lady in the meane time ſate weeping on her paſtrie, being held by two of Brandolls Squiers, euer praying and beſeeching God, to preſerue and defend the ſtrange Knight, whoſe vertue and prowesſe ſhe much admired, and whom ſhe feared was not long able to indure the brunt of the battaile, for that the other Knight hauing recouered himſelfe from vnder his horſe, came likewiſe to to the combat, to her great griefe and ſorrowe. But caſting away her head from the ſight of the battaile, as loth to ſee the death of him, who had ſo valiantly fought in her de-

fence

fences, he eſpied two Knights with a Squire, come gallopping as faſt as their horſes could runne, whom ſhee likewiſe feared to be ſome of Brandoll's companie, but therein ſhe was deceaued as you ſhall heare in the next Chapter.

CHAP. IX.

How Sir *Brewes*, and Sir *Cadrus*, with the Lord *Gwaltero's* Squire came to his reſcue, and how they conducted the Lady to her Caſtle.

SIR Brewes, and Sir Cadrus the two Knights, which tooke the way after the Lord Gwaltero, accompanied with his Squire, thinking becauſe he had taken the wrong way, that hee ſhould haue had no occaſion of fighting, made the leſſer ſpeede after him, vntil ſuch time, that comming vnto the top of the hill which he had paſſed, where the peaſant ſhowed him the foure Knights that ledde away the Lady, from which place they beheld them fighting, and thinking that it might be Gwaltero, they ſet ſpurres to their horſes, and galloped ſo faſt, that they were come within the calling, euen as the Knight who was hanging by the ſtirrupe had recouered himſelfe. Then Sir Cadrus cryed to the ſayd villaines, giue ouer fighting with that alone Knight, and defend your ſelues from the force of my Launce, and there with gaue one of them ſo ſound a buffet, that he had no neede at all to ſeeke for a Surgion, for his Launce entring in at his breſt, paſſed through his hart almoſt a yeard. Sir Brewes ranne at the other and miſſed course, but turning againe with his ſword in his hand, gaue him ſuch a blowe on the head, that cleauing his Helme, and wounding him ſomewhat deepe, cauſed him halfe aſtonied to fall to the ground. Gwaltero ſeeing this vnexpected ayde, being almoſt before in bitter diſpayre of victory, gaue Brandoll a ſore blow on the right legge, and cloſing with him, by cleane force o-uerthrew him to the ground, then ſetting his foote on his

necke, he raſed of his Helme, and with one blow parted his head from his ſhoulders. And comming to the other whom Sir Brewes had wounded, would haue done as much for him, but that hee immediatly fell on his knées, crying for mercy, proteſting for euer after to be at his commaund in all places whatſoeuer. Gwaltero vppon this his promiſe, granted him pardon, ſwearing him for euer after, not to offer wrong nor violence, to any Lady or Gentlewoman.

Then turning to Sir Brewes, and Sir Cadrus, hee gaue them hartie thanks for their ſuccour, without which he had béene doubtleſſe ſlaine. Demaunding of them likewiſe, what was become of the Lord of Menew, ſir Hepault, and the reſt. And they told him how they parted at the 3. waies, to goe ſuccour the Lady whom hee had ſo well reſcued, telling him likewiſe, that they did admire how or by what meanes the Lady was brought thether, ſeeing it was in the other way that ledde directly forward that they ſet on her and her huſband, as the Squire informed them.

By this time the Lady being let goe by the two Squiers that held her, (who ſéeing their Maiſter ſlaine, made haſt by flight to ſaue their owne liues, which they might eaſily doe, for that no man purſued them,) came vnto the Lord Gwaltero, and falling on her knées before him, gaue him moſt humble thankes, as well for the ſafegard of her owne honor, which ſhée eſtéemed farre afore life, as alſo for reuenging her huſbands death: whom Brandoll in the former fight had ſlaine, with ſome two or thrée of their ſeruaunts, who put themſelues in their defence, with all, offering him many large proffers for reward. But Gwaltero taking her by the hand, raiſed her from the ground, willing her to be of good comfort, aſſuring her whatſoeuer hée had done for her, was but his, and the dutie of euery good Knight, and therefore willed her to attribute it, not to him but to God, who is the reuenger of all wrongs: and to account of him but as an inſtrument, appointed by God to miniſter iuſtice on thoſe murderers. Then the Ladie entreated him and the reſt, to conduct her vnto a Caſtle of

hers,

hers, ſome two leagues of, where ſhe would intreate them to reſt themſelues, vntill ſuch time as his woundes were throughly cured, which ſhould be done by a damſell of hers, very expert in the Art of Surgery. Vnto which requeſt, they eaſily conſented, eſpecially the Lord Gualtero, whoſe hart was already wounded with the Ladies beutie. Then binding vp his wounds as well as they could, they mounted on horſebacke, directing their courſe towards the foreſaid Caſtle, & the better to paſſe away the time, Gualtero beganne to queſtion with the Lady of many matters, eſpecially of the cauſe of the late combat, which ſhee declared vnto him, with ſuch a modeſt and comlie grace, that hee being before a little wounded with Cupids ſhaft, was now ſo altogether ouercome with loue, that either he muſt needes ſue for grace, or die by concealing his affection: ſo feruent was the flame, and ſo weake his reſiſtance.

By this time were they paſſed moſt part of they' way, and were come vnto the Caſtle, euen about the time, that the Sunne drawing into the Weſt, ſeemed to take leaue of the view of theſe hether Regions, where by the Lady they were moſt kindly receiued: and welcommed with ſuch chere, as the ſuddennes of the time could afford. After Supper, the Lorde Gualtero being brought into a moſt goodly and fayre Chamber, had his wounds carefully looked vnto, and dreſſed. Then beeing layd in a ritch bedde, imbrodred very coſtly with gold and pearle, and curiouſly wrought with imagry, and other ſumptuous ſhewes, where beeing layd, the good Lady curteouſly bad him good night, willing him to commaund for all things in the Caſtle as his owne. Then departing away, leauing him in a world of imaginations, ſhee tooke order for the interring of her Huſbands bodie, which the next day was effected with great ſolemnitie, according to the cuſtome of the country then vſed.

CHAP. X.

Howe *Gwaltero*, with his company, staying the healing of his wounds, made his loue knowne to the Lady, with his succesſe therein, and of his departure in his queſt.

THe Lord Gwaltero and his company, staying the curing of his wounds, which were moſt carefully looked vnto, and dreſſed by the ſame Damſell which had them in cure, was euery day viſited continually by ỹ Lady of the place, who ſhewed herſelfe ſo thankfull vnto him, that ſhe almoſt neuer would depart frõ his preſence, which bred in him ſuch ardent deſire, that not being able longer to conceale his loue, one day ſhee being ſitting by his bedſide, none being in preſence, but his Squire, and the damſell that attended his wounds, taking her by the hand, and fixing his eyes ſtedfaſtly on her face, ſaid.

Gracious Lady, I doe not knowe, nether can I immagine, how theſe my ſpeeches, which at this time I ſhall bee forced to vtter, may be by you accepted, yet truſting in the gentleneſſe of your kind nature, haue made choiſe rather to open my griefe vnto you, then by concealing thereof, or euer to languiſh in paine. Know then, that ſince the firſt time it was my hap (when I fought with Brandoll and his companie) for to ſee you, that then your rare and ſingular beauty, wounded me more farre deeper, then did either their ſwords or launces, which ſince by your continuall courtſies, and by your many exquiſite vertues, which I haue beheld in you, are ſo much augmented and increaſed, that vnleſſe you of your excellent bounty, take pitty and compaſſion on me, and with ſpeede yeeld ſome reliefe, vnto this my oppreſſed paſſions, I knowe not what to expect ſaue death onely, which if you ſhould proue pitileſſe, it would be moſt welcome vnto me: wherefore let me intreate you, to conſider theſe my paſſions, and to eaſe them with pitty, and thereby ſhall you gaine vnto your

ſelfe

ſelfe for euer, a true knight, and a conſtant louer. Thus concluding his ſpeech with a moſt deepe ſigh, proceeding from the bottome of his hart, he remained ſilent, attending her anſwere, which ſhould be to him either as life or death, to which ſhe replied.

My Lord, I cannot but muſe at this your diſcourſe, neither can I chuſe but ſmile, to ſee your honor ſo merrily diſpoſed, to ieſt at me in this kind of ſort, hoping that mirth is a ſigne of ỹ amendment of your wounds, which to me would bee moſt ioyfull, ſeeing that in my defence you receaued them. But if theſe your ſpeeches proceede from you in earneſt, knowe then, that the beauty which you ſay hath inflamed you, in my conceit is of no ſuch force, as to wound a man of your worth, neither is it likely that ſo ſudden a liking as you ſpeake of, ſhould bee able to worke any ſuch effect, if my curteſies haue bene the cauſe, they were neuer more then you deſerued, and therefore to be eſteemed by you as a debt due from mee to be payd: if my vertues which you ſpeake of, they alas are ſo fewe, and ſmall, that they are not to be accounted of, but yet ſuch I hope, which rather ſhould giue you an occaſion, to ſeeke to others, then any ſhow to yeild vnto your lawleſſe loue: for know for a ſuerty ỹ Menea, for ſo was ſhe called, regardeth more her honor & good name, then ſhe doth all the riches or wealth of this world, knowing the one to be but momentarie, the other perpetuall: wherefore I beſeech your honor to giue of theſe vaine ſutes. But if you ſeeke to inioy me as your wife, which I thinke you will take ſcorne of, I being but a poore Lady, and deſcended but of a meane Parentage, in reſpect of your Lordſhip, yet notwithſtanding conſider I beſeech you, the late death of my huſband, whom if I ſhould ſo ſone forget, it would for euer be accounted a great ignomie, and ſhame vnto me.

The Lord Gwaltero, at theſe laſt ſpeeches interrupting her, replied, moſt beautifull Lady, thinke not that I goe about any way to diſhonor you, neither that thoſe my former ſpeeches to be fained, but whatſoeuer I haue ſpoken

to

to proceede from the sinceritie, and bottome of my hart, which is, and for euer shall remaine yours, whilst the fates shall permit me to inioy this breath, which I wish no longer to continue, then I remaine your faithfull and constant knight protesting before the almighty God: neuer to accept of any other wife, so you thereto consent, in witnesse whereof, I heere deliuer you this ring: then taking a faire Diamond from one of his fingers, he would haue put it on hers, but she withdrawing her hand, made him answere, that shee had made a solemne vowe to God, which shee was minded to performe, which was, that for one whole yeare, shee would neuer consent to marry with any one whatsoeuer, but if it pleased his Lordship, so to esteeme of her, as to accept her for his wife, at the end of that appointed time which she had set: he should find her most ready & willing to obey vnto his will, in any that might not bee to her dishonor.

Gwalter gladded to the hart, with this heauenly conclusion, and beeing as one newly reuiued out of some dead traunce, toke her in his armes and kissed her, protesting that he would most willingly remaine so contented, vntill the fixed time were expired, and then God willing, he would returne and espouse her: in ỹ meane time he intreated her, to accept of that his small Ring, which should be a cause for her to remember him by, which she then most willingly accepted, and in requitall thereof, gaue vnto him a Iewell of hers, which hee alwaies after either in Tilt or Turnie wore, being fastned in the crest of his Helme, and which at all times put him in minde of his Lady and Mistris. Thus by the comming in of Sir Cadrus, and Sir Brewes, with diuers Gentlemen and Damsels, which came to see the Lord Gwalter, their loue talke gaue ouer for that time, entertaining the others with diuers pleasant and merrie discourses, wherewith they accustomed to passe away the time, euer thinking it long till they might be in their former quest, which was the sooner, for that Gwalter being comforted, with the hope of future pleasure and con-

tent,

tent, was healed much the ſooner of his wounds, ſo that within fifteene daies, hee was able to beare Armor: and finding himſelfe indifferent ſtrong, toke order with the reſt of his companie, the next day to depart onwards, on their way towards the confines of Denmarke, where they hoped to haue ſome ioyfull tidings of him whom they ſought, or at leaſt waies to méete againe with the Lord Menew, & Sir Henault, whom the Lord Gwaltero dearely loued. Thus hauing taken order for the preparing of their iourny, the next day they all tooke their leaue of their kind hoſtis: and Gwaltero taking her aſide, deſired her with the teares ſtanding in his eyes, to be mindefull of her former promiſe, aſſuring her, if God did grant him life and liberty, hee would returne againſt the ſixed time by her appointed, to ſolemnize their marriage, in the meane time he would commend her into the protection of the almighty God. But the good Lady, not being able to ſpeake for weeping, held him about the necke, often kiſſing him, as one loth ſo ſone to forgoe his companie, yet at the laſt, ſéeing no remedie, intreated him to remember her and his promiſe, vntill which time of his returne, ſhe would ſpend her daies in prayer, for his ſafe and proſperous ſucceſſe. Thus departed theſe two Louers, whom we will leaue for a while, to ſpeake of other matters.

CHAP. XI.

How the Lord of *Menew* and Sir *Henault*, hapned to arriue in the Cittie of *Parris*, & of the Turnie there proclaimed by the Duke of *Orleance*.

The Lord of Menew, and Sir Henault, taking the direct way which they were informed, to reſcue the Lady, and her huſband, rode on a great pace, till ſuch time that comming vnto the place, where the battaile had béene fought but a little before, found the dead bodies of the auncient Knight, and diuers of his ſer-

uants: but for the murtherers, they could not knowe what was become of them, becauſe they had taken a bie and vnknowne way, which ledde them as before is ſayd, vnto their deſtruction. Wherefore taking their way towards the next Towne, they rode on haſtily, minding to ſtay there vntill they might heare ſome newes of the Lord Gwaltero, whom they imagined would likewiſe arriue there, the next day at the fartheſt. But hereof being deceaued by reaſon of the occaſions before recited, after they had remained there ſome three daies looking for him, they departed towards the Sea-ſide, and comming to a Towne called Forefront, they found diuers Ships bound to ſeueral coaſts, wherefore deuiding their ſelues, ſome to one Country, ſome into another, the Lord of Menew, & Sir Henault, being loth to part companie, ſhipped theſelues for Fraunce, hoping there either to find him whom they ſought for, or elſe to purchaſe fame by their prowelle within that Kingdome: and ſoner then in any other might it be obtained, if they ſhowed themſelues valerous, by reaſon of ỹ continual turnaments, which were dayly vſed there by the Nobles, and Knights of the regiõ. And being ſhipped, and hauing wind at will, they ſet ſaile ſo proſperously, ỹ within eight daies after they landed at Calice, where they a while ſtayed, as well to refreſh themſelues after their comming from the Sea, as alſo to view the Towne and Country thereabouts, and to make inquirie, if peraduenture they might heare of him, in whoſe Queſt they went.

Thus hauing ſtayd there twelue or fourteene daies, not learning any newes at all of their infortunate King, they tooke their way towards the royall Cittie of Paris, where the King then kept his Court, with a great aſſemblie of Lords and Ladies, which were then drawne together to behold a great Turny, proclaimed by the Duke of Orleance, by the Kings conſent, againſt all ſtrangers: the occaſion of which Turny grew by this meanes. The Duke being a luſtie young Knight, was inamoured on ỹ Kings eldeſt daughter, a moſt beautifull and goodly Lady, who

for

for her grace, vertues, and beautie, had not her equall in all the kingdome of Fraunce, being called Emilia, whoſe perfections had ſo intangled his hart, that hee could not by any meanes free himſelfe from being thrall to her beautie: and thinking no meanes better to winne a fayre Lady, then by ſhewing himſelfe valiant, hee continually frequented Tylts and Turnyes, oftentimes carrying away the cheefeſt prizes of valour: which was a meanes not onely to obtaine great loue, and fauour of the King, but alſo drew to him ſome liking of his Lady and Miſtris, the Princes Emilia, which ſhe ſometimes would make ſhewe of, by her kind countenaunce, and pleaſant ſpeeches to him: which curteſies put him in ſuch an exceeding hope, and pride withall, that thinking himſelfe halfe ſure of her loue, and that being graft with the ſame, no man was able to compare with him, neither in happines nor valour: one day perceiuing the King to be walking alone, in a pleaſant & delightfull Garden, adioyning to the Pallace, came vnto him, and falling into ſome conference with him, at laſt intreated his Maieſtie to grant him leaue to proclaime a Turny, which hee, and ſome certaine number of Knights of the Court, would defend againſt all commers, for the ſpace of 3 daies. And that after, by the ſpace of fiue dayes more, hee himſelfe would kepe the field, and defend againſt all commers, his Miſtreſſe the Princeſſe Emilia, to excell all others in beautie, whatſoeuer.

The King hearing his demaund, and conſidering the great danger which thereby might happen to him, diſſwaded him from it, aſſuring him, that it would be impoſſible to continue againſt ſo many, as would hazard themſelues in that enterprize: and that although he by his valor might ouercome many hardie and gallant Knights, yet at length, being wearie, & tyred with ouermuch labour, might peraduenture be vanquiſhed, by one inferior to thoſe whom before he had ſubdued, whereby hee ſhould loſe his former reputation, gotten with no ſmall perill and danger. This and many other matters, did the King alleage vnto him,

to cauſe him to giue ouer that enterpꝛiſe. But hee bꝛing as is beſoꝛe ſaid, ſo puffed vp with a ſelfe conceit, & aſſurance of Foꝛtunes fauour, imagining that on whom Venus ſmiled, Mars would not ſeeme to frowne, continued ſtill verie impoꝛtune, till at length, the King bꝛing ouercome by his earneſtneſſe, granted to his ſute. Pꝛeſently cauſing Heraults and meſſengers to be ſent abꝛoade into diuers plaꝛes, to giue notice thereof: that euery one which deſiꝛed to tꝛy his foꝛtune in his Loues commendation, might be there to make triall at the day appointed.

In the meane time, the Duke oꝛdained a place foꝛ the Tylt-yard, which was hard adioyning to ẏ Pallace, which he cauſed to be inuironed in with raiſes of great height, appopnting at each end a large gate oꝛ entrance, that tenne Knights on hoꝛſebacke might enter in front. The ſpace within the rayles, was of that bignes, ſo that 5000 knights might well turny togethers, & round about were ſcaffolds erected foꝛ the beholders to ſit on, ſauing that part next to the Pallace, which was open foꝛ the King, the Quéene, and their Loꝛd & Ladies, who ſtanding in the windowes, and battlements of the Pallace, might with moꝛe ſafety behold the Turny. Likewiſe he cauſed another place to be incloſed, with onely one gate oꝛ entrance, hard adioyning to the part of the Pallace, where the King with the reſt, might moꝛe conueniently ſtand, to behold the ſingle combats which by him ſhould be foughten: and at the other end, he cauſed a rich Tent to be pight, which was of Blew veluet, ſette thicke with ſtarres of gold, and Flowꝛe-deluces, ſhewing that he was deſcended from the blod ropall. Vpon the top thereof ſtoode Cupid, all naked, with his bow and arrowe in his hand, aymed directly at a faire picture of Marble, which ſtoode faſt by the ſaid Tent: on the top wherof was placed the poꝛtrature of the beautifull Pꝛinceſſe Emilia, which was ſo artificially made, that it ſeemed to be the pꝛinceſſe herſelfe: vnder whoſe ſeete were diuers places made, foꝛ placing of their pictures, whoſe Knights ſhould by ouercome by the Duke.

In

In this ſort was all things ordained againſt the turnie, when the Lord Menew, Sir Henault, and diuers other Knights, came into the Cittie, ſome two dayes before the Turny began, where they toke vp their lodging in an honeſt Burgeſſes houſe, making preparation for ſuch things as they ſhould want againſt the day.

CHAP. XII.

How the Duke, and the reſt of the Lords and Knights bare themſelues in the Turny, and how Prince *Edward* the laſt day bare away the Prize.

THe day being come that the Turny ſhould begin, and many Knights, and great Lords of diuers Countries come thether, ſome only to ſée, others to prooue themſelues therin. The Duke of Orleance, as thæſe Challenger, accompanied with the Duke of Aniowe, the Lords Mompenſcer, the Duke Robert of Normandy, the Marſhall de Berone, Francis the yong Prince of Condy, together with two thouſand other Knights, entred the Liſts at one end, at the other entred Charles the young Prince of Spayne, accompanied with Edward Prince of England, the Duke of Yorke, the Lord Mowbray, the lord Dowglaſſe of Scotland, the County of Zeland, the lord Mongomery, the young Henry of Burbon, two French lords, who becauſe they were not intreated by the Duke, and partly by reaſon they meant to prooue themſelues againſt him, in the behalfe and triall of their Miſtriſſe beauty, entred the field againſt him, with the number of two thouſand, taking their places as he before had done.

The King and Queene being placed, all the other princes, Lords, and Ladies, toke alſo their places, where Emilia ſitting amongſt the reſt, ſéemed like Cinthia, placed amongſt the leſſer Starres, being in the fulnes of her power: or like Diana following her chaſe thorow the woods and [illegible] accõpanied with her traine of Nimphs, whoſe

paine in purſute, had raiſed in her Alablaſter chéeks, a liuely vermilion die: ſo ſéemed the beautifull Princeſſe, hauing in her well proportioned face, the louely roſe and lilly, ſtriuing for maiſterdome, which cauſed the luſtie young Duke to be of ſuch a couragious mind, that not being able longer to deſiſt from the battaile, deſired the Duke of Britaine, and the County Palatine of Rene, who were appointed Iudges of the field, to cauſe the ſignall of battaile to begin, which was preſently done, by the ſound of a trumpet, and the Heraults crying to the Knights, euery man to doe his beſt.

Then ranne together, the Duke of Orleance, and Edward Prince of England, and met ſo fiercely together, that the Duke breaking his Launce on his enemies ſhield, cauſed him to ſtagger, and had hee not taken hold by his maine, hee had gone to meaſure his length on the ground, but the Engliſh Prince met him with no leſſer might, for piercing his ſhield, his Launce lighted on his Gorget, cauſing him to loſe both his ſtirrups, & with his head almoſt to touch the pummel of his ſaddle, which being ſéene by the King, was greatly commended: the Prince Charles of Spaine, and Robert of Normandie met like wiſe, and breaking their ſpeares, paſt on without once mouing on the other, the Marſhall of Berone was diſmounted by the Lord Mowbray, but reſcued by the Duke of Aniow and others. By this time were the greateſt part of the Knights met together, ſo that the cloudes ſéemed to be couered, with the ſplinters of the Launces which were broken, many on both ſides were vnhorſed, and againe remounted by their fellowes, there might you haue ſéene ſome vſing ſwords, other maces of Iron: twiſe that day was y Prince Charles, beaten from his horſe, and againe remounted by the Duke of Yorke, and Henry of Burbon. The Lord Douglas, this day ſhewed, that the Scots were not much inferiour vnto any Nation for feats of Chiualrie, for being accompanied with the Lord Montgomerie, the Lord of Menew, Sir Henault, the Countie of Zeland, and ſome tenne or twelfe

other

other Knights, beate downe all thoſe which put themſelues againſt them, which being ſéene to the Duke of Orleance was woꝛſe thẽ death, who being held very ſhoꝛt by Pꝛince Edward, the Loꝛd Mowbray and others, ſo that he could hardly helpe any others, yet ſéeing the hauocke which was made by the Scot and his companie, fearing leaſt they were pꝛeuented, he ſhould looſe the day: ſet ſpurres to his hoꝛſe, and with his ſwoꝛd in his hand made ſuch way, that at laſt he came whers they were; and lifting up his ſwoꝛd, gaue ẏ Scottiſh Earle ſuch a blow, that bꝛuſing his Helme, cauſed him to fall beſides his ſadole, which blow beeing ſéene by Sir Henault, was likewiſe partly reuenged: foꝛ with one blow which he ſtrake, hee cleft the Dukes ſhield, and ſliding downewaꝛds, wounded his hoꝛſe in the ſhoulder. In the meane time the Spaniſh, and Engliſh Pꝛinces with their companie, were like to haue wonne the day, foꝛ that ẏ French, no longer able to indure their extreame blowes, began foꝛ to turne their backes: which being pꝛeuented by the Iudges, they foꝛthwith cauſed the retreate to be ſounded, thereby to ſaue the Challengers from ſhame. Then departed euery man the Liſts foꝛ that night, returning to their lodgings, to refreſh themſelues againſt the next day: the King to ſhowe the moꝛe honoꝛ vnto ẏ ſtrange Pꝛinces, ſent foꝛ them, deſiring them foꝛ that night, to ſup and reſt themſelues in his Pallace: vnto which many of them cõſented, where at ſupper they were roially feaſted, and welcomed by the King and Quéene. And after the Tables being with-drawne, they fell to daunting, maſking, and courting of the Ladies and damſels: where the young Pꝛince Edward dallying with the fire, was ſcoꝛched by the flame, foꝛ taking the Pꝛinces Emilia by the hand to daunce, after they had ended their meaſure, fell to court her with pleaſant ſpeeches, which ſhee ſtill moſt wittily anſwered, which Cupid beholding, wounded his hart with a poiſoned ſhaft of loue, turning his ieſt into earneſt: thus paſt they away moſt part of the night in dauncing and reuelling, vntill ſuch time, that Ioue his eternall lampes, where with hee

lights

lights the nether world were halfe ſpent, and Atlas moiſt daughters ſtroue into the Ocean deep, to driue their weary drout: then departed theſe to their beds, where euery one quietly tooke their reſt, except the Engliſh Prince, who of all the night could not inioy any ſleepe, ſo ſorely did the remembrance of his new loue torment him, ſometimes determining to aſke her of her Father, then thinking the Duke to haue a former promiſe of her, ſeeing hee vndertooke the defence of her beauty, was minded to fight with him for her, hoping either to kill him, and ſo to get her, or elſe by vanquiſhing him, to winne away her loue. With theſe and many ſuch like imaginations, paſt he away the wearieſome night, vntill about the breake of the day, Somnus ſeaſed on his ouer-watched eies: ſo that he ſlept vntill the ſunne was two degrées from the earth aſcended, then riſing vp hee apparrelled himſelfe, and went downe into the great Hall, where he found the King, withall the other Princes and great eſtates, ready to goe to the Chappell, to heare diuine ſeruice: whether likewiſe hee accompaned them, afterwards returning to the Pallace, they found the Tables couered for dinner, where they were all ſerued according to their eſtates, with moſt coſtly and daintie cates. Dinner being ended, euery one went to arme themſelues for the Turnie: where the ſtrangers bare themſelues ſo valiantly, that they wonne the honor from the Courtiers, which was ſuch an extreame griefe vnto the Duke of Orleance, that for that night hee would not come to the Pallace, vowing the next day to be reuenged, eſpecially on the Engliſh Prince and his companie, who twiſe that day had beaten him from his horſe. Moſt part of the reſt ſpent the time, as they did the night before in dauncing, and ſuch like paſtime, where againe the Engliſh Prince, found meanes to Court his Ladie, declaring vnto her his loue & affection: but ſhe, who as yet was another waies minded, made ſmall account of his prattle, ſcarce believing any thing that he ſaid touching loue. The next day the trumpets ſounding, warned the Knights to prepare for the

Turnie, euery one deſirous to ſhowe himſelfe valiant and hardy: when entring the Liſts at the firſt encounter, the Engliſh Prince ſeeing the cheefe Challenger comming againſt him, and looking vp to the window where Emilia ſate, calling to minde his former determinations, was reſolued to doe him the greateſt diſgrace he might: the Duke on the other ſide was of the ſame opinion, for hee greatly feared leaſt the Prince would proue his corriuall in loue, by the often caſting vp of his head to the window where ſhee ſate. Thus being both reſolued, they met together ſo furiouſly, that the Duke was forced to forgoe his ſaddle, and meaſure his length on the graſſe, the Princes paſſing forwards ſorely ſhaken, hauing loſt both his ſtirrups: at length recouering himſelfe, entred the preaſe, where on all ſides he beate downe Knights, and vnbarred Helmes, making ſuch way where he went, that he might eaſily be followed of his companie, eſpecially the Prince Charles, Henry of Burbon, Sir Henault, the Lord of Menew, the Lord of Yorke, the Lord Mowbray, and others, who following the young Prince, ouerthrew all they met, cauſing the French to giue backe and retire, euery man thinking himſelfe happieſt, when he was farthеſt of.

On the contrarie ſide, Robert of Normandie, the Prince of Condie, the Duke of Aniow, and the Marſhall: with the aide of their followers, made that part where they were very hote and dangerous to the ſtrangers, vnhorſling and beating downe many. The Duke of Aniow, with his Launce before he brake, ſtrake downe three Knights to the earth, at laſt, being incountred by the Lord Douglaſſe, was diſmounted and taken priſoner, in diſpight of all his company. The Duke of Orleance, being againe remounted, went raging vp and downe ſeeking for the Engliſh Prince, and comming to the Lord of Menew, gaue him ſuch a blow, that hee draue both horſe and man to the ground, which being ſeene by Sir Henault, like a man inraged rod to him, and gaue him ſuch a blow, that he cauſed him to bow his head to his breſt. But the Duke recouering

uering himſelfe, returned him the like payment. Thus continued they two, laying the one on the other, like two Smithes, ſtriking with their ſledges on an Anuill: till ſuch time as the Engliſh Prince, with a mace of ſteele in his hand returned, & gaue the Duke ſo puiſſant a blow therewith, that breaking his ſhield to peeces, ſo amaſed him, that his horſe carried him from place to place in a ſound, which being ſeene by the King, and thinking the Duke to be ſore hurt: imagined likewiſe that it was impoſſible for any man to indure thoſe mighty blowes, which he continually ſaw the Prince to giue, cauſed the Iudges to make an end of the battaile, which was preſently doone, euery one attributing the cheefe honor to the Engliſh Prince, eſpecially the King, cauſing foorthwith a Herault of Armes to proclaime him, the cheefeſt Knight in the aſembly: and being brought to the windowe where ỹ King ſate, by the Iudges of the field, had a Garland of flowers ſet vpon his head by the faire Emilia. Which as ſhe was doing, vnawares was ſomething touched with loue towards him, which being by her then ſuffred to kindle, afterwards grew into a great flame. Thus being crowned as King of all Knights, hee was conducted with great honor to the Pallace, the Duke of Orleance, being mightily grieued with his diſgrace, as alſo fearing the diſlike of Emilia, retired to his Tent, minding not to come foorth of the Liſtes, till ſuch time as hee had recouered ſome part of his loſt honor.

CHAP. XIII.

How the Duke defending his Ladies beautie, ouercame diuers Knights, & how the Engliſh Prince being diſguiſed, entred the Liſts.

THe next day, no ſooner had bright Aurora vnbard her chriſtall gates, and bridgrome like ſkept forth, the glorious ſunne ſpreading her ſiluer raies on old Neptunes face, but that the luſty Duke prickt on with his former

former dayes diſgrace, hoping to recouer his loſt honour, was all armed, ſitting on horſeback with his Launce in his hand, cauſing the trumpets to ſound, to ſummon vnto the battel thoſe, who in defence of their Ladies beauties, would hazard theſelues, to try the doubtfull verdit of angry Mars. The Duke bare in his ſhield the portrature of a man, with the one hand renting his owne bowels, and with the other preſenting his hart to a fayre Lady, which ſeemed little to regard or to eſteeme the ſame, with this word or motto written ouer their heads, I liue through hope: all the reſt of his Armor was ſet full of flaming harts, which ſeemed very liuely to burne.

Hee had not long remained on horſebacke, before ſuch time that the King, and moſt part of the Lords and Princes, hauing taken their places to behold the iſſue of his enterpriſe, there entred the liſtes a gallant young Knight, ſonne vnto the Marcus of Ferara, his Armor all greene, and in his Shield he bare two harts combind in one, with theſe words, Nil timeo. Hee brought likewiſe a ſmall cheſt couered ouer with thinne plates of ſiluer, in which was incloſed the liuely portrature of his Lady, who was daughter vnto the Duke of Millaine. In this ſort comming vnto the Duke, he told him, vnleſſe he were miſinformed, the contents of his Challenge was, that thoſe Knights that by him were ouercome, ſhould leaue behind them their coate-armors, and alſo their Miſtriſes portrature, to be placed at the feete of the fayre Emilia, and ſo to depart: but whoſoeuer ſhould ouercome him, ſhould likewiſe haue the diſpoſing of the portratures that there were hanging, and to defend the Challenge the reſt of the time, except he happned likewiſe to be vanquiſht. The Duke aunſwered, that the ſame was his Challenge: but the coate-armors were to be put of preſently if they were vnhorſed, and afterwards, if they would hazard the Combat with him, they ſhould. And as for the portratures, hee hoped his ſhould be the firſt which ſhould be placed, ſeeing the difference of their beauties did already manifeſt it.

When departing the one from the other, they placed their Launces in theyr reſts, and ſetting ſpurres to their horſes, they met together ſo fiercely, that their Speares flew into the ayre: and comming together with their bodies, they ſtrake one the other ſo rudely, that the Duke loſt both his ſtirrups, and was forced to ſtay himſelfe by his horſe neck, but the other was ouerthrowne horſe & man to the ground, and by chance not able to cleare himſelfe, was ſore bruſed by his horſe, not being able to get vp againe: then ỹ Duke diſmounting, holpe to get him from vnder his horſe, which curteſie the other perceiuing, preſently put off his coate armor and departed the Liſtes, being by reaſon of his bruſe not able to combat. Then the Duke cauſed his Ladies picture to be placed at the feete of Emilia, and calling vnto him one of his Pages, ſent her the Coate-armor, which ſhe receaued, willing him to tell his Maiſter, hee had doone more then ſhe deſired.

Next vnto him of Ferrara, entred the Liſts that day, the Lord of Montgomery, bringing with him the picture of the Duke of Poyters daughter, whom he earneſtly loued, and was likewiſe at the ſecond courſe vnhorſed, to his great ſorow, but yet not minding to hazard the Combat, becauſe the Duke was accounted the beſt combatter on foote in all Fraunce, departed. After him came diuers others, who were all ſerued in the ſame ſort, for that day he vnhorſed in all the number of 22. Knights, placing their Ladies Pictures according to their deſerts. The next day came into the Liſtes young Henry of Burbon, very deſirous to be reuenged, for the diſgrace of the Lord Montgomery his coſin, yet alſo bringing with him the picture of a Damſell whom he ſomewhat loued: but his comming was more to winne honour on the Duke, then to obtaine his Miſtriſſes fauor. He bare in his Shield, Paris and the three Goddeſſes, but giuing the Apple to neither, with this motto, Cuique neſcio, ſignifying thereby the vnconſtancie of his mind in loue. At the firſt courſe they brake their Launces to their hands, not ſo much as once mooning one the other: then taking

new

new Launces, they met againe ſo furiouſly, that Henrie had much to doe to keepe his ſaddle, and the Duke looſing one of his ſtirrups, and his raines of his bridle, paſt on likewiſe, and making an end of their carreare, Henry returned with his ſword in his hand, which the Duke perceiuing, drew forth his alſo, beginning betweene them a right fierce and dangerous conflict. But the Duke being better experienced fought with the greater aduantage, giuing Henry leaue a while to follow the rage of his furie, thereby the ſooner to weary himſelfe. Which indeede he did, when the Duke more fiercely then before aſſaulted him, cauſing him to ſeeke how to couer and defend himſelfe vnder his ſhield. At length, being wounded in many places, and hauing loſt very much blood, he fell from his horſe in a ſwound, to the great griefe of the King, & all the beholders, who greatly feared leaſt he had been ſlaine. But being conuayed out of the field, and his wounds bound vp, and ſtanched, hee was ſone brought to himſelfe.

After him, the Duke ouercame twelue other Knights, not any of them being able to indure againſt him, ſo intollerable were his blowes: which the Engliſh Prince perceiuing, and grieuing to behold, the next day determined vnknowne to any one, to enter the Liſtes diſguiſed, where he did not doubt but he would ſone abate his pride, and reſoluing hereof, the next morning he armed himſelfe, and being mounted on a good horſe, his Armor ſeeming all ruſtie, and his ſheeld couered ouer with leather, painted with a Kite and an Eagle flying after a Doue, with this word, Not to obtaine, he entred the liſts, euen at ſuch time as the Duke had ouerthrowne an Engliſh Knight which put himſelfe againſt him.

CHAP. XIIII.

Howe Prince *Edward* ouercame the Duke, and afterwards continued in the Listes the rest of the time, ouercomming diuers Knights, and of his declaring his loue to *Emilia*.

THe Prince being entred as afore is declared, gaue cause of admiration vnto all beholders, as well by reason of his furniture, as also the deuice of his Shielde, yet was he by the King and diuers others much commended, for his cunning proportion, & gallant managing of his horse, the King saying vnto the Queene & the Duke of Britaine, that hee much feared, least that Knight would beare away all the honor frō the Duke, which in the two former daies he had wonne. But the Duke himselfe being pusfed vp with the former victories, nothing at all esteemed him, and comming vnto him, demaunded for his Ladies picture, for whose fauour he was to vndertake the Combat.

The strange Knight replied, that her picture was inclosed in his hart, and trauailing through that Country, hearing of his Challenge, came purposely thether to try his fortune against him, not hauing the time to prouide any other portrature, then that which hee had already told him of. The Duke made answer, that then he could not combat against him, in regard that ouercōming him, hee should lose the guerdon of his Conquest. But yet seeing hee had such an earnest desire, he should in stead of her picture, leaue behind him both his Ladies name, and his shield, to be placed at his disposition.

The Prince hereto willingly consented: and casting his eye to the place where the Ladies were standing after a little pause, sayd. Know then Sir Duke that the Ladie whom I so much loue and esteeme, and whose vertues and graces are so deeply fixed in my hart, that naught but death can extinguish the same, is the most exquisite, & beautifull Princesse

ceſſe Emilia héere preſent.

The Duke beeing no longer able to harken to his ſpéeches, being his coſtuall: anſwered, no doubt but thy folly, hath ouercome thy braines, rightly doth thy figure on thy ſhield ſignifie thy madneſſe, which is the ſelfe ſame kite there repreſented, which ſeeketh before the Eagle to obtaine the Doue: but thou ſhalt preſently féele, the reward of thy folly, if thou abide but the ſtroke of my Launce. Then turning about his horſe, not ſtaying for any farther reply, went to fetch his courſe, the other doing the like, and ſetting ſpurres to their horſes, placing their ſtaues in their reſts, they ran together furiouſly, & like two fierce rammes ſtriuing for ſuperiority, leaning a great diſtance betweene them, that with the more might, they may come together with their horned heads, ſo met theſe worthy Knights, cauſing their Launces to flie into the aire, being broken into a thouſand ſheeuers, and méeting together with their bodies, cauſes their horſes to réele backwards, to the wonder of the beholders, but quickly recouering themſelues, they beganne to aſſault the one the other: ſéeking by all meanes, either, how moſt to indanger his aduerſarie, and to ſaue himſelfe: at length the Engliſh Prince lifting vp his ſword aloft, ſtroke the Duke directly on the vpper part of his ſhield ſo ſtrong a blow, that cleaning it into two péeces, his ſword paſſed forwards wounding him in the left thygh, but that blow was not long vnreuenged, for lifting vp his ſword with both hands, & raiſing himſelfe in his ſtirrups, gaue the Prince ſuch a blow on the head, that had he not taken it with his ſheild, that blow had ended the battaile: but neuertheleſſe, paſſing through both ſhield and helme, he gaue him a ſmall hurt in the head, cauſing him halfe aſtonied to réele from ſide to ſide, but before he could deliuer another blow, the Prince had recouered himſelfe, and comming in more fiercely then before, ſtroke at his head, but by reaſon of the ſtarting of his horſe, the blow lighted on his ſhoulder, breaking the buckles and reuits of his pouldron, and gliding downe, gaue his horſe ſuch a wound,

that

that being no longer able to containe his Maisters weight, fell to the ground, which the Duke perceauing, made the greater spéede to auoyd his Saddle, and cléering himselfe, recouered vpon his féete: which the Prince séeing, alighted also, then taking their swords and shields in hand, they beganne a most cruell and dangerous féete combat, to the amazement of all the beholders, who neuer had séene the like: for being both inraged with enuy and disdaine, like Lions méete, or Bulls, or Tigers, fierce prickt on with hungers rage, finding a pray, or booty to their minds, fall out and striue, and both with téeth, horne, and nayles, wound one the other, renting their entrailes, and dying themselues, and grasse with blond, so stroue these two, and with their continued equall fight, their stéely Armor being not able to hold out the blowes, nor defend the thrusts, wherewith the one still wounded the other, no man being able to iudge, to which side the victorie would incline, euery one meruailing who the strange Knight should bee: at last the Duke beganne somewhat to shrinke backe, and to bare the remnant of his shield very low, which the Prince perceauing, séemed to increase his strength, and followed him more fiercely then before, driuing him from place to place, till at last comming before the window where Emilia stoode, the Prince casting vp his sight towards her, imediatly stood as one in a traunce, which the other perceauing, beganne againe to gather courage, and gaue him two or thrée mighty blowes, telling him that hee would bring him out of his dumpes. Tis true replied the Prince, being halfe ashamed at his folly, but to your paine. Then plucking vp himselfe, they renewed their battaile, which séemed like to the burning of some hidden flare: hauing a while escapt the extremitie of the fire, which had before consumed great woods & trées, and séeming to be extinguisht, presently renewes a flame againe, and so goes out. Such was their latter strife, for the Prince being rowsed from his slumber, persued him with so many waighty blowes, that the Duke being no longer able to hold out, fell to the

ground,

ground in a traunce: which the Iudges perceiuing, came ſpeedily vnto them, fearing leaſt the ſtrange Knight would haue proffered him farther violence, but he, putting vp his ſword, demaunded whether there was ought elſe to bee done. The County Palatine anſwered, nothing but to defend the place as the Duke had before. Then the Duke was conuaied away, and being vnarmed, was dreſſed by the Surgians, which found no dangerous wound, but that his great loſſe of bloud, cauſed him to bee extreame weake and faintie. The Duke being conayed away, the King was very deſirous to know who the ſtrange Knight ſhould bee, and being about to ſend one vnto him, to that end. The Prince preſented himſelfe before him, and pulling of his Helme, deſired his Maieſtie to grant him leaue to continue the Dukes challendge: when the King beheld him, and ſaw that it was the Prince, who had ſubdued ỳ Duke, his griefe for his hurts, and ouerthrow was ſomewhat eaſed. Then ſpeaking to the Prince, her ſayd, my Lord I did not thinke you would haue thus delt with vs, as vnknowne, thus to haue put vs into ſuch griefe, as you haue done by the wounding, and vanquiſhing of the Duke our Coſin: yet ſeeing it was his owne folly in making the challendge, it doth the leſſe grieue vs. But for your requeſt in continuance thereof: I would wiſh you rather, to giue it ouer then to indanger your ſelfe therein, but if ſo be you are ſo minded, we freely grant you leaue, praying to God ſend you better hap, then the Duke hath had before you. The Prince humbly thanked his Maieſtie: and then turning to the Princeſſe Emilia, intreated her likewiſe to graunt him leaue, as her father had done to defend her beautie, ſeeing that it was his hap to obtaine the ſame by his good Fortune. The Princeſſe being before hand a little touched with his loue, and now ſeeing the paines and danger, which he vndertoke for her ſake, was altogether ouercome: wherefore dying her cheekes with a maidenly bluſh, ſhe told him the paines which he already tooke, and that he would againe indure for her ſake, was vnknowne

her: yet because she would not proue discurtious, nor ingratefull, seeing the King her father had thereto consented, she was content to accept him for her Knight, and to alow of that which he requested. The Prince hereewith beeing meruailous contented, returned her harty thankes, and so departed againe to the Tent, where hee was met by the Spanish Prince, the Duke of Yorke, and Sir Henault, and many others: and was by them disarmed, and after dinner, his wounds being bound vp, hee armed himselfe againe in a most costly Armor, set all with true loue knots, wrought of pure gold, and beeing attended by the foresayd Lords, he entred the Lists: where hee had not long remained before such time, that there came a Knight of the Kingdome of Naples: a man in those parts famoused for his valor and hardinesse, and being inamored on a young Damsell of that Country, promised her to come into France, whereby his valor, hee would cause her to bee for euer famoused: but his hap was so hard that at the first encounter, he was sent to measure his length in the ground, not being able to combat. After him that day, and the next day, he vnhorsed to ye number of 40 Knights: the last day there came very fewe to try themselues, the most part hauing in the fiue former daies, beene by the Duke foyled, by meanes whereof he past away the time in companie of the Spanish Prince, and other great Lords, vntill it was almost Sun set, at which time there entred an ill fauoured withered face fellow, something heigher then three horse loaues, by birth a pagan, but brought vp by the Queene of Portugall, as her Dwarfe, this proper aplesquire falling in loue with a Damsell, almost as hansome as himselfe, being likewise attending on the Queene, and hauing obtained her good liking on that condition, that he should in all places maintaine her beauty: desired the Queene that hee might be made Knight, assuring her that he would so behaue himselfe, that thee and all others should thinke the order well bestowed vpon him. The Queene seeing his earnestnesse yeelded vnto him, and caused him to be Knighted, who no

sooner

ſoner hauing receaued the order, and hearing of the Duke of Orleance challendge, but he determined to fight againſt him, and cauſe him to confeſſe his peate, to maze beauti-full then Emilia. Continuing in this imagination, he cauſed her Picture to be drawne, and therewith came vnto Parris, entring the Liſts at ſuch time, as the Prince with the other Lords were ready to depart, and comming vnto the Spaniſh Prince, demaunded which was he that had ouercome the Duke. The Prince mernailing to ſee ſuch a gallant in that equipage, demaunded what he would with him, marry quoth the Dwarfe fight with him, and cauſe him to confeſſe, that the Damſell which I loue, doth excell in beauty all others: the Prince ſmilling, hauing much adoe to containe himſelfe from laughter, demaunded who was his Lady, and where her Picture was. Hee anſwered ſhe was attending on the Quéene of Portugall, and therewith drew forth her Picture, at ſight whereof euery one burſt forth in a great laughter. The Dwarfe being herewith angry, aſked the Prince whether it were he or no that he had inquired for, the Prince anſwered no, but ſhowed him the Engliſh Prince, withall telling him that the time was paſt, whereby he had loſt his labor, vnleſſe he could intreate him to Juſt willingly.

Then the Dwarfe comming vnto him, intreated him if the time were paſt, that yet in courtiſie he would breake a Launce with him: he ſmilling anſwered, that betwéene that and Sunne ſet, hee was bound to Juſt with any that ſhould come, wherefore he was contented. Then taking each of them a Launce, they ranne together: the Prince miſſing his courſe of purpoſe, but the Dwarfe with much adoe brake his Launce, almoſt diſmounting himſelfe with his owne ſtroke. The King, Quéene, withall the Lords and Ladies, laughed hartily héereat: the Dutches of Burbone telling Emilia, that now her Knight was like to looſe all his former honor.

The Dwarfe had no ſoner broken his Launce, but preſently he drew forth his ſword, but ỹ Prince intreated him,

to runne one courſe more, which he eaſily yelded vnto, then taking a new ſpeare, they ranne againe: the Prince taking him in the midſt of his Shield, bare him out of his ſaddle a whole ſpeares length, not being able to riſe from ỹ ground. Then was ſent vnto him by the King, the young Prince Phillip his ſonne, to intreate him to come to the Pallace, whether he went, being accompanied with diuers great Lords and Knights, and was very roially receiued by the King, the Queene, and their fayre daughter, and feaſted with many ſumptuous and rare ſorts of viands, after ſupper, they fell againe to their wonted ſports of dauncing and maſking: where the Engliſh Prince againe made his loue knowne vnto Emilia, aſſuring her, that vnleſſe ſhee pittied his eſtate, he was but dead, for without her, he was but as a ſhadow without ſubſtance, or as a body without a ſoule. The Princeſſe, who by this time was as much ſcorched with the flame as hee, and did feele as great force of loue, knew not well what to anſwere, but at laſt yelding to loue, ſhe told him, that if he loued her as hee made ſhew of, ſhee had no reaſon but to requite him with the like, but as yet ſhee was young, and at her Parents diſpoſition, without whoſe conſent ſhe could not make her owne choyſe, but if he could obtaine her Fathers conſent, ſhee was likewiſe contented to accept of him as her Lord and huſband.

Heere will we leaue of to ſpeake of theſe Louers, and returne a little to ſpeake of the Gentleman of the Foreſt, and his education.

CHAP.

CHAP. XV.

How the young Princes of *Denmarke*, and *Saxonie*, beeing brought vp together, were ſo like, that they could ſcarce be knowne one from the other, & of theyr mutuall loue.

DI remember how the Duke of Saxony bringing with him the young Prince of Denmarke into his Dutchie, cauſed him to be brought vp with his own ſonne, calling him by the name of the Gentleman of the Foreſt, becauſe they knew no other name that he had. The Dutches, partly by the commandement of her huſband, & partly for the beautie ſhee beheld in him, made great account of him, vſing to play and dandle with him, as much as with her owne ſonne: by meanes whereof, in ſhort time he beganne to recouer a freſh and liuely colour, and ſtill the elder they grew, the more like the children ſeemed the one to the other: and as in likenes, ſo alſo grew they in loue one to the other, delighting alwaies to be together. And beeing but children, if any one had happned to wrong either of them, the other would alwaies helpe to be reuenged, which bred in the Duke and Dutches, ſo great content as might be. But comming to the age of 7. yeares, they were inſtructed in the Latine and Greeke tongues, by a Tutor whō the Duke had appointed them for their bringing vp. Hee beeing a very wiſe and diſcreet Knight, who in former time had ſpent his youthfull dayes in traueling ſtrange Countries, and ſeeking after aduentures, as was the vſage of Knights arrant: hee hauing as before is ſaid, the charge of education of the two Princes committed vnto him, inſtructed them ſo well, that in ſhort time they profited very much in thoſe languages, eſpecially the Gentleman of the Foreſt, as beeing of a more quick and readie wit, but otherwiſe, theyr diſpoſitions, & conſtitutions both of mind and body were ſo like, that the Duke was forced to ſet marks whereby to know them: and theyr loue in like

manner was so great, that had the one beene sicke or ill at ease, the other seemed to be a partner in his griefe: if the one laughed, the other was iopfull, if the one wept, the other must nedes mourne to bare him company, such a simpathy of loue had Nature infused in them, that it was almost impossible for the one to liue without the others company.

And comming to the age of twelue yeares, they were instructed by their Tutor, to ride and manage horses, wherin they so much profited, that in short time they wered very skilfull, especially the Gentleman of the Forrest, who both in aptnes of mind, and agilitie of body, passed the most exquisite of his time: which caused the Duke so much ỳ more to loue and esteeme of him, hoping that in time, God would manifest from whence, and of what parentage he was discended, imagining as well by his beauty, as also by his rare forwardnes, ỳ he must nedes be issued of noble blood. The Dutches likewise grew into so great a liking of him, for his diuers rare and singuler vertues, ỳ she many times deuised with herselfe, how and by what meanes she might cause him to loue her daughter, whom hee esteemed as his Sister, a Lady for beauty excellent, and for the perfections of the mind, able to compare with any then liuing. She I say, being of this mind, oftentimes resolued to motion the matter vnto him, and to discouer vnto him the manner of his finding, which vnto him was vnknowne, by reason he was alwaies held and accounted as their naturall Childe: yet thinking that course might be a meanes, whē he should come to age, for to forsake their Court, to seeke for his true Parents, she gaue ouer that determination, minding to conferre with the Duke her husband thereof. And finding him one night very merry, and pleasantly discoursing, and commending of both the young Princes vnto her, shee declared vnto him her mind, and affirmed, that in her conscience, there could be no better match for her daughter, seeing his vertuous behauiour, which was more to be esteemed then any riches whatsoeuer. The Duke did not greatlie

dislike

diſlike hereof, but yet thought it fitter to bee left alone, vntill ſuch time as both of them ſhould attaine to a more riper yeares, for as then he was but 12 yeares old, and ſhe nine yeares old. Heere againe will we leaue them, to ſpeake of the Lord Gwaltero, and his companie: who after they departed from the Ladies Caſtle, toke their waies towards the confines of Germanie.

CHAP. XVI.

How the Lord *Gwaltero*, trauelling through *Germanie*, arriued in the Citty of *Viena* in *Auſtria*: where hee vndertooke the defence of a diſtreſſed Lady, wrongfully accuſed.

THe Lord Gwaltero, departing from the Ladies Caſtle whom he had reſcued, at time ſuch as he parted from the Lord of Menew, and Sir Henault, being accompanied with Sir Cadrus, Sir Brewes, and his Squire: rode on a long time without finding any aduenture worth the remembrance, euer inquiring after Sir Henault, and the Lord of Menew, with the reſt of their companie. At length paſſing through many Townes of Germanie, they arriued in a Citty of the Dukedome of Auſtria, called Viena: bordering almoſt on the confines of Hungaria, being as then the chiefe Citty of that prouince, and as then vnder the gouernance of a moſt ſtirne and rigorous Prince, named Duke Otho. Who for his tiranous cruelty, was greatly feared of all his neighbour Potentates, and ſcarcely beloued of his owne naturall Subiects: hee was a man for ballor, and hardineſſe greatly eſteemed, and had not his outragious crueltie, and beaſtly ſenſuallity ſtayned his Vertues, he might well haue beene compared with any Prince, then liuing within the confines of Chriſtendome: but rage and ſenſuall appetites both commonly ſo abound, eſpecially in the harts of great men, whom God hath giuen ouer to themſelues,

themſelues, that vertue is altogether choked, and ſwallowed vp in vice, as might well appeare in this Duke Otho. Who (ſo he might haue) cared not by what meanes he came by it: as by the ſequell of this Chapter, you ſhall more plainly vnderſtand.

This Duke had within his territories, a moſt gracious and vertuous Ladie; being ſole heyre vnto her father, who was a man of large poſſeſſions, and greatly beloued in his Country, for his vertuous and vpright dealings to euery man. This noble Gentleman dying, and leauing his daughter about the age of 15 or 16 yeares, was ſought vnto of many great and mighty Lords: ſome for her lands and liuings, others for her beauty and vertues, and diuers for both. But to make ſhort this diſcourſe, ſhee was at laſt wooed, and wonne by a Knight of that Country, called Hoſtinius: a man who for his vertues and valor in Chiualry, might be thought equal with any Knight in Auſtria, and being married vnto the young Lady Vitella, they ſo well loued and liked together, that they ſcarce one euer gaue cauſe of diſlike to the other, which cauſed them to bee commended, and praiſed through all the Dukedome, and the confines there abouts: but this ioy and content, had not continued fully the ſpace of three yeares, before that froward Fortune enuying their bleſſed ſtate, cauſed her fame to be reſounded in ỹ eares of the Duke Otho. Whoſe luſtfull hart beeing ſet on fire with report of her beauty, cauſed both her and her huſband to be ſent for to his Court, where beeing arriued, hee at the firſt moſt kindly receaued them, and as the old prouerbe is, made much of the childe for the Nurſes ſake: ſo hee intertained Hoſtinius, vſing him with all the familiarity that might bee for his wifes ſake, alwaies ſeeking opportunity, to make knowne his luſtfull loue vnto Vitilla. And one day finding her ſtanding at a window, looking into the Pallace garden: hee came vnto her, and after a little idle prattle, fetching a deepe fained ſigh, he declared vnto her his loue, vowing and proteſting, vntill ſhe tooke pitty on him, and yeeld to his deſire,

ſire, there was no way but death with him, alleaging that as her beauty had wounded him, ſo was it her part to releeue and comfort him againe, declaring that as by nature ſhe was faire, ſo likewiſe ought ſhe to bee kind & mercifull.

The good Lady beeing halfe in a maze with this vnlooked for proces, and ſcarce knowing how to anſwer him, conſidering his nature to be ſuch, that an abſolute deniall might cauſe him to grow into choller, both with her and her huſband, and therby to worke both theyr confuſions. And likewiſe to feede him on with fained ſpeeches of loue, might bring her name in queſtion of ſlaunder, & though for a time by that meanes ſhe might put him off, yet in the end, ſeeing himſelfe deluded, he would reuenge himſelfe with the greater crueltie, determined therefore of two euils to chuſe the leaſt: wherefore ſhe replyed in this manner.

My gracious Lorde, I doe not thinke that you will ſo much diſhonour your ſelfe, as by forcing of mee to violate the holy rites of marriage, and to wrong my Lord and huſband in that ſort, as by your ſpeeches you pretend, which if you goe about to performe, know for certainty, that God who created all things of nought, will ſeuerely puniſh and reuenge ſo great a crime: and likewiſe aſſure your ſelfe my Lord, that whilſt I haue power and ſtrength to reſiſt, you ſhall neuer obtaine the ſame, wherefore I would wish your honor to giue ouer all ſuch wicked imaginations. And herewith ſhe flung away frō him in a great chafe, leauing him muſing on her ſhort anſwer, and deuiſing which way hee might bring his will to paſſe, at laſt reſolued with himſelfe, that there was no way to accompliſh the ſame, but onely by the death of her huſband; hoping that hee beeing dead, ſhee might be brought to any thing. And beeing thus reſolued, he went downe into the great Hall, where finding diuers of Hoſtinius ſeruaunts, hee made choice of one, whom he ſaw continually moſt neere vnto him: and taking him a ſide, declared vnto him his intent, and at laſt, with large promiſes wonne him, both to conſent, and alſo to be the

Actor of his Lords tragedie, which in this sort was acted. About some three nights after their agrément, Estonio, for so was that false seruaunt named, hauing gotten a sléeping powder, so cunningly cõuayde it into the wine which both his Lord and Lady dranke of, with some of the rest of their nérest attendants, that béing layd in their bedds, none of them awaked till the morning. In the meane time, euen about midnight, when both by nature, and effect of their drench, they were soundest aslépe, then entred the damnable Traytor, and drane into his Lords head a naile, which he had no sooner performed, but hiding the hammer wherwith he had committed that cruell homicide, vnder the bed, he departed to his owne bed, where he remained vntill the next day, that all the rest of his fellowes, were risen, and the Chamberlaine, as was his custome, came, and softly knocked at his Lords chamber dore, wherewith the Lady awaked, and turning about, shée found her Lord and husband as cold as Ice, which strake such a terror in her hart, that fetching a great shréeke, she likewise fell into a traunce. Her damsels which attended her, hearing the shréeke, fearing shée was not well, entred the Chamber, where they found their Lord dead, and their Lady in little better case, but at length, hauing recouered life in her, they called in the Gentlemen his attendants, who béing entred, it is impossible to describe the sorrow and lamentation which was made, where Estonio, in outward shewe, seemed not to be least sorrowfull, so well knewe he how to dissemble the matter. At last, the rumor heereof came to the eares of Duke Otho, who presently like a man imaged with griefe, hee came posting to the Chamber, where at his first entrance, to make shew of the loue which hee bare to the dead bodie béinglying, hée rent his hayre, beating his brest, protesting that he would haue giuen halfe his dukedome, to haue him aliue againe, although (GOD knowes) he himselfe was the onely cause of his death. The good Lady, shee in the meane time shewounded, and reswounded, and had it not béene for the damsels, without all doubt shee would haue

borne

borne her huſband company amongſt the dead, ſeeing ſhee was depriued of him amongſt the liuing: ſo extreame was the greefe which ſhe felt, & ſo great the loue which ſhee bare him.

The Duke in the meane time, for the better obtayning of his purpoſe, cauſed ỹ dead body to be imbaulmed, ſaying he would haue him buried with the greateſt ſolemnity that might be, as the man whom he moſt loued: and becauſe it was impoſſible to be performed ſo ſuddenly, he would haue him kept vnburied, by the ſpace of a month, againſt which time he warned all the cheefe of his Subiects to be there. Hoping in ỹ meane time by one meanes or other, to worke Vitella to his will, wherefore euery day he would come to viſite her: many times declaring his paſſions vnto her, deſiring her to conſent and yéeld thereto. But ſhe good Lady, not minding ſo ſoone to forget him whom ſhe loued ſo déere-ly, neither yet to make choiſe of one whom for his wicked life, ſhe could not chuſe but hate: and alſo, by his impor-tant ſute, imagining that to gaine her, he might by ſome kinde of poyſon, haue made away her huſband, ſeeing that ſo ſuddenly he died: gaue him this aunſwere.

My Lord, I know not the cauſe of this your impor-tunate ſute, neither can I thinke but that it proceeds from a vild and ſinfull minde, that profeſſing ſo great loue as you did to my late Lord and huſband, you would tempt me his wofull wife ſo ſoone to forget him, and commit ſo vile an offence before God: wherefore know for a certainty, that I neither can, nor will cõſent to loue him, whom my minde perſwads me to bee ỹ deſtroyer of my late deceaſed Lord & huſband: for without you had therein béene guiltfull, you would not haue perſiſted in this your wicked perſute after my honeſty.

The Duke knowing himſelfe guilty, in that where-with ſhe had accuſed him, & alſo growing into choller with her rude deniall, briefly replied. Lady I perceaue that, that which cannot be obtained by faire meanes, muſt now at length be wonne by foule: and ſeeing that you wil not wil-

lingly conſent vnto the thing, which in kind and milde ſort I haue intreated of you, know for a certainty, that I will winne it by force: whereas you accuſe me of murdering of thy vnfortunate huſband, aſſure thy ſelfe that the guilte thereof, ſhall lighten on thy owne head: which I my ſelfe will iuſtifie againſt thée. And thus ſaying, he departed her chamber, changing all his former loue into cruell hate, alwaies pondring in his minde reuenge, till ſuch time, as his Nobles being come together, for the ſolemnizing of the funerals, at which time (comming as if hee would haue viewed the dead corpes) with ſome of his nobillity, laying his hand on his head, on a ſudden he ſeemed to feele ỹ nayle: when fetching a déepe ſigh, hee cryed out, that his déere friend Hoſtinius had béene ſlaine by treachery. The nobles beholding this ſudden accident, came and beheld the ſame, euery one imediatly iudging, that by that wound he receiued his death. The Duke aboue all others ſeemed moſt to wounder hereat, and at length turning to the company, ſayd, that he hoped to find out the murtherers, ſeeing God ſo ſtrangely had giuen knowledge of the déede, which vntill now was not ſo much as once dreampt of.

Wherefore preſently cauſing Vitella, with all her Damſells and attendants to be atached, he examined them euery one, and comming to Eſtonio, whom her before had inſtructed, examined him in ſuch ſort, that he declared how that the Lady Vitella, had many times made proffer of her loue vnto him, and that he as often had denied her, becauſe he would not wronge his Lord and Maiſter: how that ſhe had proffered him, both to murder her huſband, and afterwards to marry with him, if he thereunto would giue his conſent: ſtill clearing himſelfe as much as it was poſſible. This confeſſion being vttered, ſhee poore diſtreſſed Lady was forthwith condemned, not being ſuffered ſo much as once to ſpeake for her ſelfe, Eſtonio was likewiſe committed to priſon: there for to remaine a while to bleare ỹ peoples eyes, who could hardly beleeue that, which hee had iuſtified.

The

The ſame day the Duke proceéded in iudgement, againſt Vitella, where he iudged her for her fault, to loſe all her lands, which he imediatly ſeaſed on, and that except within ſixe months, ſhe could find a Knight ẏ ſhould maintaine her cauſe, againſt ẏ Duke in ſingle combat: for he as a déere friend vnto her deaſed huſband, would be the man that would proue that ſhe had comitted treaſon, and murder againſt him, with theſe conditions, that if he were vanquiſhed, that then ſhe ſhould be deliuered frée, and all her lands and goods reſtored vnto her, but if it hapnéd that he remained Victor, that both ſhee and the weake Knight, which ſhould put himſelfe in her defence, ſhould be burned a liue at one ſtake, which he cauſed for the ſame purpoſe to be ſet vp in the midſt of the Market place.

This ſentence pronounced, ſhe good Lady was committed vnder ſafe kéeping: no body but ſuch whom the Duke appointed, being ſuffered to come vnto her. Which cauſed many to iudge the Duke rather to be guilty then ſhe, eſpecially ſuch who had knowne the great loue betwéene her, and her deceaſed huſband: conſidering alſo, that onely by this meanes he had gotten her inheritance into his hands, which was the chiefeſt marke he aimed at.

Now to returne againe to our purpoſe, the Lord Gualtero and his company, comming as before wee haue ſaid into Viena, hapned to take vp his lodging in a kinſmans houſe of the Lady Vitellas, who (by reaſon of her miſhap) was very ſad & penſiue: and béeing ſitting at ſupper, was demaunded the cauſe of his ſorrow by the Lord Gualtero, vnto whom hee declared the former diſcourſe, with the loue of the Duke vnto Vitella, which he had likewiſe learned of her, not forgetting in any one poynt, to declare the cõmon wickedneſſe of the Duke, therby the eaſier to perſwade his crime likewiſe in this.

Gualtero hauing attentiuely liſtned vnto this diſcourſe, meruailed greatly at the ſtrange tyranny of the Duke, and béeing halfe reſolued of the Ladies innocencie, determined with himſelfe, to put himſelfe in her defence, wherefore de-

maunding how hee might come to ſpeake with the Ladie, and alſo, how néere the time appointed for her execution was expired, (for that he was loth to tarry ouer-long in any place, becauſe of his returne vnto his Lady & Miſtriſſe) his Hoſt replied, that the time of her death was now within fiue dayes, and that as yet ſhee was not prouided of any Champion, becauſe ỹ Duke was a ſtrong puiſſant knight, and the condition of the combat ſuch, that euery one feared to entermedle therein: and as touching the meanes to ſpeake with her, if he would vouchſafe to take the paynes, he would (ſupper béeing ended) conduct him to the place, where hee ſhould from her owne mouth, heare what ſhee would ſay to cléere herſelfe. Gwaltero béeing by nature pittifull, and alſo by oath of Knight-hood bound to helpe, and ſuccour thoſe that were diſtreſſed, conſented to goe with him to the priſon. Where béeing come, and brought into the preſence of Vitella, her Colin declared the cauſe of their comming, who after thanks to them giuen, and lifting vp both her eyes and hands towards heauen, proteſting her innocencie, ſhe declared as much as ſhe knew touching the ſame, vtterly denying any loue towards Eſtinio, or any other, ſaue onely her Lord Hoſtinius. Gwaltero being fully reſolued of her innocencie, demaunded if ſhe would put her caſe into his hands, who would for her deliuery aduenture his life, and no doubt but her cauſe béeing iuſt, God would proſper their quarrell. Shée humbly thanking him, anſwered, that ſéeing he ſo curteouſly offered himſelfe, to him and God onely ſhe committed her caſe: deſiring, that according to her innocencie he might ſpéed therein, and no otherwiſe. Then taking their leaue, till the day came he departed, leauing her ſomewhat comforted with hope of her Knights good ſucceſſe, and equitie of her cauſe.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVII.

How *Gwaltero* combatted with the Duke, and ſlew him, & of the kind proffers that were made him by *Vitella* & the Nobility, with his departure thence.

THe day béeing come, wherin the Lady Vitella was either to bring foorth her Champion, or elſe to commit her body to the fire, the Duke béeing royallie accompanied, entred the Liſts, cauſing her in continent to be ſent for, and béeing come, demaunded for her Champion, ſhée aunſwered, that God had prouided her one, who at ỳ ſound of the trumpet would likewiſe appeare. The Duke hearing that ſhée was prouided of a Knight, wondred what he ſhould be, and béeing prickt in conſcience with the guilt of his fault, grew halfe into diſpaire, and would willinglie (if it might haue béen with his honour) haue deſiſted from the Combat. But God who hardned the hart of Pharao, likewiſe hardned his, thereby the more euidently to make knowne vnto the world, his mercy and louing kindnes, towards them that feare him, and his iuſtice on them, which againſt their owne conſciences commit ſinne and iniquitie. So that cauſing firſt the Lady to be conuayed towards the ſtake, the trumpets were ſounded, but no Knight was ſéen to approch, which cauſed him to grow more proude and inſolent, thinking then, that no man dared to combat againſt him. But at the ſecond warning the Lord Gwaltero appeared, mounted on a mighty Courſer, with his Launce on his thigh, and his Helmet on: in this ſort came hee before the Iudges, and lifting vp his beuer, made a little ſhew of reuerence, then proceeding on with his ſpeech, he ſaid, that béeing accepted of Vitella as her Knight, hee was come to defend her innocencie: and that he marueiled, that they being appointed Iudges of the fielde, would contrary to all reaſon, ſend her towards the place of execution, before the Combat were ended: then deſiring that ſhe might again be

ſent

ſent for, he held his peace: which they foorthwith cauſed to be done, placing her whereas ſhe might behold the iſſue of the battell. In the meane time, the Duke comming vnto Gwaltero, demaunded what, and of whence hee was, who aunſwered, that he was a Knight arrant, of the kingdome of Denmarke, and paſſing through his Country, had heard of his cruelty ſhewed vnto the diſtreſſed Lady, and being moued with pitty, was come to vndertake her defence, which he hoped ſo well to performe, as before night to cauſe him confeſſe his treaſon againſt her. The Duke raging hereat, replied, that doubtleſſe he was ſome one of her Minions, that being weary of his life, was come for company to be burnt with her, which ſhould be performed with all the torments that might be.

Now by this time Vitella being brought backe and placed, the Iudges cauſed both Knights to be ſworne, then being warned by a Herault euery one to doe his beſt, they ſet ſpurres to theyr horſes, and incountred ſo rudely, that the Duke was throwne out of his ſaddle, being wounded a little vnder the right breaſt, and ſore bruſed with the fall, Gwaltero was not wounded at all, but yet by reaſon of the mightineſſe of the encounter, his horſeback brake vnder him, wherefore he was in like ſort driuen to alight, and being both on foote, they began a cruell and fierce fight, cleauing their ſhields, and hewing their armor in peces, ſo that euery blow cauſed the blood to trickle downe, dying the greene graſſe into a ſcarlet hue. Thus continued the fight a long time very vncertaine, no man knowing to whō victory would incline: ſometimes the one triumphing in the others loſſe, and by and by againe, the other reioycing to ſee his enemy ſtope. Thus continued they the ſpace of three houres, the beholders meruailing they could indure ſo long: at length ſtanding to breathe themſelues, the Duke ſpake vnto him, ſaying, Knight, thou ſeeſt that as yet I haue the aduantage, but the great ballour which I haue found in thee, makes me to pitty thy eſtate, wherefore I am contented to remit thee the Combat, conditionally that ỹ wilt

remaine

remaine with mee, and alſo I will giue vnto thée halfe of her lands whom thou defendeſt. Nay, nay, replied Gwaltero, I ſcorne thy proffers, but if thou wilt reſtore the Lady and her goods, and confeſſe héere before this company, thy treaſon committed againſt her, I will grant thee thy life: otherwiſe looke for no mercy at my hands. Then taking theyr ſwords in their hands, and couering themſelues with the remnants of their ſhields, they fell againe to their former conflict, which cõtinued not long before that Gwaltero deliuered a mighty blowe on his head, which cleft his Helme in two, and wounded him ſo ſore that hee fell to the ground, which Gwaltero ſéeing, ſtept vnto him, and would haue ſlaine him out-right, had not he intreated mercy, promiſing to confeſſe the whole circumſtance of the treaſon.

Then the Iudges cõming vnto him, hee confeſt firſt his loue to Vitella, then the murder of Hoſtinius, and laſtly his hate towards her for refuſing him, from whence grew this manner of reuenge which he intended.

No ſooner had he made his confeſſion, but turning about his face he immediatly dyed. When the Iudges cauſed his body to be carried away, to the intent to haue him interred, but they were ſeued of that labour, for a flock of Wolues comming from out of the woods there adioyning, deuoured his accurſed carkaſſe, to the great admiration of all the beholders. Then immediatly was Vitella brought downe, and greatly honored, and Eſtonio being apprehended, was burned in the fire prepared for his Lady. Gwaltero being conducted to his lodging by the Nobility and Vitella, was by them vnarmed, & his wounds very carefully looked vnto, where hee remained the ſpace of eyght wéekes, during which time hee had many great proffers made him by Vitella, as the inioying both of herſelfe, & all her inheritance, and by the Nobilitie hee was proffered to be accepted as theyr ſouereigne Prince and Duke, if ſo he hee would accept of Vitella to be his wife. But hee who had ſetled his minde in another place, gaue thẽ all harty thanks for theyr good wills towards him, excuſing himſelfe as well as hee

might, and desiring them to bestowe it on some one more worthy then himselfe, with whom Vitella might be coupled in marriage. Thus excusing himselfe from receiuing that which most men would haue coueted, hee remained there till his woūds were throughly whole, then taking his leaue of Vitella and the rest, he departed towards the confines of Belgica, hauing receiued of Vitella both horse and Armor, for a remembrance of her, in stead of his owne, which in the battell against the Duke was broken and spoyled.

CHAP. XVIII.

How *Gwaltero* passing through *Belgica*, arriued in *Holland*, and comming to the Castle of *Cornew*, was taken prisoner.

Thus being departed from Viena, hee was accompanied by diuers of the Nobilitie, till such time as passing the bounds of Austria, hee directed his iourny towardes Flaunders: at which time the Austrians commending him to God, and desiring him at his returne to come that way, they departed againe towards Viena, by whom Gwaltero commended to Vitella. In this sort being departed, hee rode onwards towards Flaunders, disguising himselfe, because he would not be knowne in that Country, where he was beloued of many: at last comming to the Citty of Gaunt, he found it still defended, and kept vnder the Subiection of the Danes, there likewise he heard of the custome of the Castle of Cornew, in the Duchie of Holland, made by the Duke Griffory. Which was (that whosoeuer would enter ỹ sayd Castle) must first alone Iust with the fiue Knights, who kept the gate of the bridge, one after another, and if it were his hap to ouercome them all, then was he to Iust also with the other fiue: first with two at once, then against the other three, but and if it were his fortune likewise to vanquish them, then was hee to fight with the other 40, by fiue, & by fiue,

ſtus: ſo that it was impoſſible for one man to vanquiſh them all. But if it ſo hapned that the ſtraunge knight, were by them ouercome, then to loſe both his horſe and Armor, and ſo to depart: vnleſſe it were ſuch a one whom they knew to be their enemy, and then was he ſure to be impriſoned. This cuſtome he rayſed, becauſe thereby he hoped to impriſon as many of the Danske Knights, as ſhould paſſe that way in ſearch of their King.

Gualtero hearing of this cuſtome, and being deſirous to ſée the ſtrength and ſituation of the place (ſo much ſpoken of, together, imagining that peraduenture their King might be there impriſoned, as indéede he was) minded to goe ſée the ſame, and then if his minde ſerued him, to make triall of the aduenture. Thus being reſolued, he ſecretly departed Gaunt, accompanied only with his Squire, leauing behind him both Sir Brewes and Cadrus, not knowing what was become of him: in this ſort he shaped his courſe the next way thetherwards, where the tenth day after he arriued, about nine of the clocke in the morning: and comming to a ſhield that hunge on a Tréé thereby, ſtrake the ſame ſo hard, that the whole Caſtle reſounded thereof. Then came forth the firſt fiue Knights, one of them demaunding what he ſought: Gualtero told him he would very willingly enter the Caſtle, to behold whether it were ſo faire within, as it ſhewed beautiful without. Yea replied the knight, but firſt you muſt according to our cuſtome Juſt with me, and my fellowes, whom except you ouercome, you are not like to gaine entrance: I haue heard (replied he) if I be not deceaued, your cuſtome, which maketh me ſomething the more deſirous to enter, in regard I thinke that a place ſo fenced & defended without, cannot chuſe but haue things worth the beholding within: wherefore I am contented to make triall of my fortune, by the ſtrength of my arme. Then touching their Launces, they two ranne together ſo fiercely, that the Knight of the Caſtle was tumbled headlong ouer his horſe taile, not being able to riſe againe, by reaſon of the weight of his Armor, which ſo ſore bruſed him

in his fall. Then ranne another of the Knights, but for haſt miſſed his courſe: but Gwaltero beeing more circumſpect, in hauing a great deale of worke to doe, met him ſo rightly, that his Launce paſſed through his body aboue a yard, cauſing him to fall dead to the ground: then his Squire brought him the Launce of the dead Knight, with which he met the third ſo ſoundly, that he ſent both horſe and man to the ground, wherehence he was not able to ariſe in haſt, by reaſon that both his feete were ſo faſtned in his ſtirrups, ỹ hee could not cleere himſelfe, but lay ſtill vnder his horſe, which ſtriuing to get vp, had almoſt ſquiſed out his Maſters breath. The fourth whoſe turne was next to runne, knew not well what to do, for willingly he would haue deſiſted frō that carrere, but being aſhamed to ſhow himſelfe ſo cowardly: he likewiſe ſet ſpurres to his horſe, but in ỹ encounter was ſent to beare his fellowes companie. The fift had ſomewhat better lucke then ỹ reſt, for at the firſt courſe he was not not diſmounted, by reaſon Gwalteros horſe being wearied with his former trauell, euen as they came to meet, ſtumbled vnder him, whereby he miſt his courſe, the other breaking his ſpeare in the midſt of his ſhield, paſt on without doing any farther hurt: then taking a new Launce they ranne againe, where the ſecond time Gwaltero met him ſo directly, that caſting him out of his ſaddle backwards, hee pitched on the ground with his head forwards, falling ſo heauie that hee brake his necke withall. Thē Gwaltero alighting, made choiſe of ỹ beſt of their horſes, ỹ mounting thereon came to the bridge ſote, where he found great ſtore of Launces, ỹ making choiſe of ỹ beſt, he deliuered a couple vnto his Squire, to keepe for him if occaſion ſerued. Now by this time were two of the other fiue on horſe backe, prouiding themſelues for the Iuſt: and all the reſt of the Knights of the Caſtle, were gathered together on the battlements, to behold the iſſue of the battaile: arming themſelues likewiſe, who ſhould be the next fiue. Thus the two Knights being mounted and furniſhed at all points, cried vnto Gwaltero to defend himſelfe: then placing their Launces in their reſts, and ſetting ſpurres to

their

their horses, they ranne together with all their force, breaking their staues in the middest of his shield, with such might, that they caused his horse to stagger backwards, hauing much adoe to recouer himselfe from falling, but he himselfe semed to moue no more, then if they had runne against some huge Oke, but his stroke was not to so small purpose, for charging his Lance against him on his right side, gaue him such a sound blow, that piercing both his shield and armor, the speares head entred cleane through his hart, causing him to fall as dead as a dogge to the ground. Then turning about (their course being ended) demaunded whether he must iust with the other Knight againe, and they answered yes: then calling to his Squire to bring him another lance, they ranne againe, where the other Knight was forced to measure his length on the ground, bearing his saddle betweene his legges.

Then againe changing his horse, hee prouided himselfe against the other three, who being all mounted on verie good horses, charged him at once, two of them breaking they? staues on his shield, and the other hitting his course, was sent headlong to the ground for being ouer hastie.

Gualtero being sore shaken with that incounter, could haue beene content to haue giuen ouer running for that time, but yet being compelled to it by reason of the custome, toke a fresh Launce in hand, and there with met one of them so right, that for euer after he made him sure enough for running. The other perceiuing his fellowes to be slaine, and that no force was able to preuaile against him, determined at the next course to kill his horse vnder him, hoping thereby to saue himselfe from the stroke of his Launce: and being this resolued, ranne againe, directing the poynt of his Launce full against Gualteros horse breast, where entring, he slew the horse, but escaped not himselfe so well as he hoped for, by reason that the horse comming so fiercely, gaue something backe, but brought his Maister so neere him, that he stroke him full in the sight of the Helme, and the barre being weake, gaue passage for

the ſpeare to his brauues, ſo that they fell to the ground both together. And Gwalter clearing his feet out of the ſtirrups, lightly recouered himſelfe againe, and addreſſing his ſhielde on his arme, with his ſword in his hand, hee marched towards the Caſtle gate, minding (ſeeing that he had proceeded ſo farre) either to enter, or die in the purſute. But before hee was come fully to the entrance, the fiue Knights, who were appointed to combat firſt with him, came forth, and all at once aſſaulted him: then beganne there a moſt fierce and bloody fight, very hard and vnequall, by reaſon they being fiue, and he but one, and alſo before ouerlabored with his former trauell, was not able to doe as otherwiſe he would: yet notwithſtanding, he layd on ſuch cruel blowes, that euery one iudged himſelfe happieſt when as he was farthеſt from him, the lokers on admiring how it was poſſible for one alone Knight, to ſhewe ſuch proweſſe, as by defending himſelfe againſt ſo many, but at laſt being ouerwearied, & wounded in many places, hauing loſt much of his blood, was forced through faintnes to fal to the ground, hauing before his fall ſlaine two of them out right, and very ſorely wounded the others, then being no longer able to reſiſtance, he was carried priſoner into the Caſtle, where he had his wounds bound vp & dreſſed, being pitied of many who had beheld his valor, but being cured of his woūds, and examined of whence he was, hee was committed priſoner into the dungion where the wofull King lay, thereby thinking the more to grieue him. Who no ſoner was let in the dungion, but they one knew the other, making the greateſt lamentation and ſorrow that might be, but at length comforting themſelues as well as they might, they made relation of their fortunes each to other, hoping that in time God would ſend them deliuerance from all their troubles. Heere will we leaue them, to tell a little what happned in the kingdome of Denmarke, through the malice of the Gouernours one to another.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIX.

How the Archbiſhop of *Maiance*, the County *Hermes*, & the Lord *Harding*, diſliking the gouernment, went about to make a King amongſt them.

THe Kingdome of Denmarke, hauing beene without their King, by the ſpace of 17 yeares, and vnder the gouernment of a certaine company of States, elected as is before declared: many beganne to diſlike with ẏ gouernment therof, amongſt whom the chiefe and principall, were the Archbiſhop of Maiance, a man very well learned, but giuen altogether vnto nouelties and change, the County Hermes, and the Lord Harding, all three great men, and ſuch as were in a manner, the only Authors of that gouernment: and the firſt yeare were themſelues chiefe gouernours in that eſtabliſhed eſtate; as appeareth in the fourth Chapter of this preſent Booke.

Yet notwithſtanding, (al this and their ſolemne bowes, ratified vnder their hands and ſeales, for the continuance, and performance of that kind of ſtate, and gouernment) they were in a manner, the firſt that repined againſt it, ſeeking by all the meanes they could, to ouerthrow and extinguiſh the ſame, either for the enuy they bare towardes thoſe who were Gouernors, or for that themſelues had neuer ſince the firſt yeare hapned to be of the Counſell, or elſe (and that which I thinke to be moſt likeliеſt) being ſtirred vp by the deuill, they deſired greater ſuperiority, then either became them, or by any waies they were worthy of, yet doubting to agree within themſelues, being but three, hauing the gouernance in their owne hands, determined therefore to elect and chuſe a King: who being by them ſo raiſed, could not chuſe likewiſe but to be ruled by them, and that vnder the colour of the King, they might reuenge themſelues of their enemies: and likewiſe preferre their

friends.

friends to honor and dignitie. And having thus resolued betweene themselues, they solicited the Scottish King to accept of the Diadem, promising him by their letters, that if he would but send ouer tenne thousand Souldiers, vnder the conduct of some expert Leader or Captaine, that then they would so ayde him, that in lesse then a yeare, he should haue all Denmarke in his subiection: conditionally, that they three might continually haue and inioy to themselues, the chiefe offices belonging to that Kingdome.

The Scottish King (harkning vnto this iolly proffer) at the first made small account thereof: but afterwards waying with himselfe the great benefits and proffits, which thereby might rise, not only to him: but to all his Kingdome and Subiects, if he might so easily obtaine the same, as in their letters they made showe of; and being againe by them solicited anew, writing vnto him in their letters, that vnlesse he accepted thereof, they would giue it vnto the King of England, or some other Prince, whom they knew would more thankefully accept of their kind offer. The County Hermes in a priuate letter besides, wrote how that if his Maiestie would (hauing conquered the Kingdome) make him Viceroy or Deputy thereof, he would send ouer his eldest sonne to remaine as pledge, vntill such time as he had performed, whatsoeuer hee made promise of: and that then he would render him such tribute, as by his Maiestie should be thought fit. Now when he had himselfe perused these letters, (and cast all doubts he could) he made them knowne to his priuy Counsell, who after long deliberation, at length gaue him this answere, that they were also of the minde, his Maiestie should accept their proffer of the Kingdome, a gift well worth the acceptance, and farther, to graunt them their owne desires, in that which they should demaunde, till such time as beeing Maister of the Country, hee might at his pleasure, then alter any thing that he would. In the meane time, to receaue pledges of their meaning, least otherwise he might repent too late. Thus hauing determined, the King sent ouer secretly vn-

to

to them, to certifie them of his intent, aſſuring each of them the greateſt dignities and honor, that the Kingdome would yeld: intreating the likewiſe, to ſend ouer their Hoſtages, vpon whoſe arriuall his forces ſhould be ready to be ſhipped, vnder the conduct of his Coſen, the Lord Douglaſſe, a man for his experience and valor excellent.

Theſe letters being thus ſecretly conuaied, were moſt welcome newes vnto thoſe arch Traytors to their Country, who forthwith ſent for Hoſtages the County Hermes his eldeſt ſonne, a gallant young youth, and one whom in time might haue proued an honorable man. The Lord Harding had but one only daughter, and her he ſent vnder cullour to be brought vp with the Scottiſh Princeſſe, & for the Arch Traytor (Archbiſhop I would ſay) was ſent an Nephew of his, an excellent good Scholler, & a notable Politician. Theſe being ſent into Scotland, they appointed the Kings forces to be ready by the tenth of May then next inſuing: and they in the meane time made all the prouiſion that might be, where we will likewiſe leaue them.

CHAP. XX.

Of a ſtrange aduenture hapning in the Court of *Saxonie*, and how the Gentleman of the Forreſt, and *Iago* were Knighted, and how the aduenture was ended.

THere was in the Kingdome of Spaine, a noble man called Segnior Adreſto, famous for his vertues and Chiualry: and hauing paſſed ouer a great part of the world, in ſeeking and following of ſtrange aduentures, alwaies hauing fortunate ſucceſſe in all his enterprizes, eſpecially in his loue, which hee bare towards a noble Lady of his owne Country, called Leonarda, daughter and ſole heyre vnto the Duke of Tolledo: one who for beauty and comlineſſe of body, was the only paragon of all Spaine, ſought vnto by many, but only inioyed by Adreſto, betweene whom there grew ſo great loue, that whoſoeuer had ſeene or knowne the ſame,

would

would haue ſworne, that then loue there had béne no greater dietie. Which when the Duke her father vnderſtoode, being loth to match her vnto one of ſo meane eſtate, although for his vertues he might compare with any, yet was his liuings very ſmall: therefore he often warned her to auoyd his company, and at length grew in great diſpleaſure wt her, threatning to diſinherit her, if ſhe did not obey vnto his will herein. Wlhich the young Lady doubting, at their next meeting, made him privy withall, aſſuring him that for his loue ſhe could be contented to forſake all. But yet ſeeing that in time her fathers good will might bee obtained, ſhe would intreate him for a while to abſente himſelfe: aſſuring him, that for her part, ſhe would alwaies continue faithfull and conſtant vnto him, and neuer accept of any other huſband, though thereby ſhe were diſinherited. Adreſto hearing her kind and louing ſpeeches, anſwered, that ſeeing it was her pleaſure, he was contented, although to be out of her preſence would bee a hell vnto him: and whereas ſhée had made him ſo frée a graunt of her loue, he proteſted before the heauens likewiſe neuer to forſake her, and that before he would conſent to loue any other thẽ herſelfe, he would be torne to péeces with wilde horſes: then deliuering each other aſſigne of their paſſed faiths, he departed. And within ſhort time after left the Kingdome, trauelling many ſtrange and vnknowne Regions, till at laſt comming into the Kings of Ireland, hee hapned to fall in likingly with a beautifull Damſell of that Country, but of meane parentage: her father being but a Marchant of that Country. On whom he ſo doted, that he had cleane forgotten, and forſaken the chaſt and vertuous Lady Lenarda: although the good Lady hauing intelligence hereof, by a friend of hers, a skilfull Magitian, oft times ſent vnto him, to cauſe him to call to minde, his former loue. At length the Duke her father dying, and leauing her ſole Miſtris and Dutches of his Dukedome, ſhee hauing with great pompe & ſolemnitie celebrated his funerals, one day ſent for her friend the Magitian to come vnto her, of whom ſhe demaunded if there were no meanes, to recall her louer

Adreſto

Adreſto againe, without whom ſhe was like to ſpend her life time in care and heauineſſe. Adriano, (for ſo the Magitian was called) made her aunſwere, that he could not directly aunſwere her demaunde: becauſe that ſhe (whom he ſo loued) wore alwaies on her finger a Ring, which was the only ſtay of his loue, which except they could get from her, it was impoſſible, euer to remoue his affection. Alſo this Ring had one other vertue, which was that whoſoeuer did weare it, ſhould not loſe ſo much as a drop of blood in any battaile whatſoeuer: wherefore when he combatted with any one, (as oft times he did for her loue.) then had he the Ring. And vnleſſe there could be found a Knight, that might by force conquer him in ſingle battaile, and take away the Ring from him, it was impoſſible to get the ſame by any deceit whatſoeuer. Lenarda hearing this, was as one halfe beſides herſelfe, but being comforted by Adriano, (who aſſured her he would trie the vttermoſt of his ſkill to find out the Knight, as he had ſpoken of.) Then taking his leaue of her, he returned home: where by his art he framed a moſt rich and faire ſword, excellent curious to the eye, and to cut, the beſt that was then in the whole world: this ſword he inchaunted in ſuch ſort, that no man but hee to whom the conqueſt of Adreſto appertained, might drawe the ſame: then bringing it to Lenarda, willed her to ſend one of her Squires therwith, to ſeeke out the Knight who ſhould by his valor recouer her loue: then deliuering it to one of her Squires, whom ſhe eſteemed for his truth and ſecrecie, with this commaunde, that whoſoeuer ſhould offer to drawe forth the ſword, ſhould firſt make promiſe of a boone, which was to goe ouer into Ireland, and to combat with Adreſto, accuſing him for falſifying of his faith to Lenarda.

Thus the Squire (hauing the ſword) trauelled to all the Princes Courts in Spaine, and Countries thereabouts: then into Fraunce, Italie, and Germanie, neuer finding any one that could once moue it in the Scabard: although many ſtout & hardy Knights made triall thereof, to this great griefe, fearing his trauell ſhould neuer haue end, nor his Ladie eaſe of her ſorowe. In this manner hauing trauel-

led through most part of Germanie: he arriued at the Court of Saxonie, desiring the Duke y his Knights might make triall, if it were any their fortunes to accomplish that, for which hee had trauailed the greatest part of Christendome. Then shewing his Sword, hee declared, that bearing the same a whole yeere, he could neuer finde any one y might draw the same. The Duke wondring hereat, immediatly after Dinner, caused all his Knights to make triall therof, himselfe being the first, but al to no end applyed they their forces. Which when the young Prince Iago, and the Gentleman of the Forrest beheld, they presently fell on theyr knées before the Duke, desiring his grace to grant them the order of knight-hood, hoping that for one of them this Aduenture was reserued.

The Duke being vnwilling at the first, by reason of their young age, that being knighted, they would hazard themselues in seeking after strange aduentures, aduised them to stay a yéere or two more, before they tooke so waitie a charge on them: affirming that it was vnlawfull to dubbe any one, before the age of twenty, at which time they should be strong, and able to indure the weight of their Armour and trauell, and not before. All which could not cause them to desist from theyr suite, but still more earnestlie they craued the same, alleaging many sundry examples of those who at younger yéeres had inured themselues to as great labours, as Reynaldo at the age of fiftéene yéeres stealing from his fathers court, went into Palestina to the Christian Armie, where vnder great Godfrey of Bullen, he obtained to be the chiefe scourge to the Sarasins, and without whom, it had béene impossible to haue wonne the holy Citty of Ierusalem. This and many other such like arguments they alleaged, whereby at length they obtained the Duke to consent vnto them: willing them for that night, according to the auncient custome, to watch in the Chappell. Then turning to the Squire, hee intreated him to tarry till the next day, seeing the two young Gentlemen were so desirous. The Squire, to satisfie the Duke, willingly consented, although

though he had no great hope of their ſucceſſe.

The two Princes carefull of their charge, hauing their Armor and other neceſſaries prouided, kept their deuout watch all night, ſometimes accompanied by the young Princeſſe, and diuers other Ladies, they paſſed away the time till the morning: at what time the Duke cõming vnto them, accompanied with many Lords & Knights, with his owne hands buckled on their ſpurres, and then drawing forth their ſwords, gaue them the gentle Accolado. Then rayſing them vp, deſired GOD to make them both good and valiant Knights. Then hearing deuine ſeruice, they returned into the great Hall, to make triall of the inchaunted Sword, where firſt the Prince Iago as the elder, made tryall, but by no meanes was able to draw it, then taking it to the Gentleman of the Forreſt, he ſaid, Brother God giue you better luck then I, or elſe this Squire is like to indure more labour. True replied he, & I doubt it greatly, ſeeing that you haue miſt: then putting his hands on the Hilts, he drew it forth as eaſily, as if it had beene an ordinary ſword, to the great wonder of the Duke, and all the beholders. Then the Squire falling on his knees, tolde him, that the bone which he required, was to goe into Ireland with him, where he ſhould combat with a Knight, being the falſeſt Louer that might be: and therewith declared the whole diſcourſe of his Lady and Adreſto, as is before recited. Here wee will leaue the Gentleman of the Forreſt, preparing himſelfe to goe with the Squire into Ireland, to combat Adreſto, concluding the firſt part of our Hiſtory.

(·.·)

FINIS.

The ſecond part of the famous Hiſtory of the two Princes, *Euordanus* Prince of *Denmarke*, and *Iago* Prince of *Saxonie*, with their ſeuerall aduentures and fortunes in Loue.

CHAP. I.

How *Euordanus* called the Gentleman of the Forreſt, hauing receaued order of Knighthood, departed towards *Ireland* with the Squire of *Lenarda*, Dutches of *Toledo*.

YOu may remember, how that in the former part of this hiſtorie, the young Princes Euordanus and Iago, hauing receaued the order of Knighthode, and the aduenture of the inchaunted ſword, being finiſhed by Euordanus, he was thereupon to trauell into Ireland, to combat with Adreſto: and now hauing ſtayed by the Duke and Dutches intreaty, ſome three or foure daies, in which time there was a ſmall Barke prepared, for his better tranſporting himſelfe, and ſuch neceſſaries as in his iourny ſhould be needefull vnto him: and now the winde ſeruing fitly for their intended courſe, he was haſtned on by the Squire to depart, who declared vnto him the great griefe and heauines, which in this meane time his noble and excellent Lady the Dutches Lenarda indured, then which hee was ſure there could be no greater torment poſſible.

And now all things beeing fitted in readineſſe for their departure, hee came before the Duke to take his leaue, where falling downe on his knees, proffering to kiſſe his graces hands, the Duke lift him vp from the ground, imbracing him in his armes, and with teares trickling downe his

his manly cheekes commended him to God, deſiring him that he would returne againe vnto his Court his aduenture being finiſhed, with as much ſpeede as might ber, whereas he ſhould be as hartily welcome as his owne natural ſon ỹ prince Iago. Theſe & many other ſuch like ſpeeches the Duke then vſed vnto him, which drawe the Knight into a great admiration, eſpecially of the words that hee ſhould be as welcome vnto him, as the Prince Iago. By which and the ſtrange name he was called by, it was to be doubted whether hee were the Dukes ſonne or not: which before this time he had neuer heard, nor ſo much as once dreampt of, ſo ſecret had his finding beene conſealed from him. And being about to demaunde the ſame of the Duke, he was put from his purpoſe by a meſſenger, which was ſent vnto him by the Dutches, to will him to come vnto her in her chamber: where hearing of his taking leaue of the Duke, ſhe attended his comming, being accompanied with her daughter the Princeſſe Egiſena, who was now attained to the age of 15 yeares, and by continuall frequenting the company of the Gentleman of the Forreſt, ſomewhat touched with loue towards him, and vnderſtanding by her mother (who deſired nothing more then to ſee them ioyned together in marriage) that they were no kin, had ſet downe her reſt, if he thereto conſented, to accept of no other huſband.

Thus leauing the Duke, not a little grieued for his departure, he came vnto the Dutches her chamber, where as he found both the mother and daughter, ſo ouercharged with ſorrow for his departure: that of a long time they were not able to vtter a word. But at length the Dutches, recouering the former vſe of her tongue, with a deepe ſigh proceeding from her hart, which manifeſtly ſhowed the inward griefe, ſhe ſuſtained for his departure, and with her eyes ſtedfaſtly fixed on him, ſpake as followeth.

Gentleman of the Forreſt, for ſonne I may no longer call you: the great loue which I haue alwaies borne vnto you, I am ſure you know to be no leſſe then that, either to

your

your ſuppoſed brother the Prince Iago, or your ſiſter Egiſena, although as by my former ſpeeches, you may perceaue you were not my owne naturall childe, but in your infancy found by my Lord the Duke in a Forreſt, in the Kingdome of Denmarke, of which place you haue euer ſince beene called the Gentleman of the Forreſt: no man knowing of what parentage you are diſcended, nor what other name then this, which the Duke gaue you to call you by. Theſe things I haue now thought good to declare vnto you before your departure, that being abſent, you may the better if occaſion ſo happen, to find out your true and naturall parents, whom I doubt not but to be ſuch as your ſelfe ſhall haue no cauſe to grieue at, nor we cauſe to be ſorrowfull for the education beſtowed vpon you, your vertues already manifeſting the ſame.

Farther would ſhe haue proceeded, but the teares trickling downe her cheekes, ſtopped the paſſage of her farther ſpeeches: when the young Knight hauing attentiuely liſtned vnto her former words, to the which thoſe of the Duke ſeemed to concure:

Replied, moſt worthy Princeſſe, theſe your ſpeeches hath ſtroke ſuch an amazednes into my vnderſtanding, that I knowe not well what to ſpeake or thinke, but my vntowardlineſſe did alwaies foreſhowe, that I was not diſcended of ſo royall an offſpring, as my Lord the Duke: yet notwithſtanding, my minde foretelleth me, I am not ſo baſely deſcended, but that I may hope for to challendge my ſelfe to be a Gentleman: and make knowne this high order, which my Lord the Duke hath beſtowed vpon mee of Knighthode, not to ſurpaſſe my eſtate: wherefore I bow and proteſt before God, heere in your Graces preſence, not to reſt nor inioy quiet abode in any place, vntill ſuch time as I haue found out thoſe from whom I am deſcended. In the meane time, I humbly intreate you to eſteeme of mee, though vnworthily as your faithfull and deuoted ſeruant: farther deſiring ỳ Princeſſe Egiſena, to honor me with ỳ title of being her Knight, vnder whoſe protection I cannot

lwke fo2 ought e'ther then gwd ſucceſſe.

The Dutches being as ioyfull of this his concluſion, as ſo2rowfull fo2 his bowed determination, ſtwd ſtill a while making no aunſwere at all. But at laſt being reſolued in her minde, that now o2 neuer it was time to follow her deuiſed d2ift: fixed her eyes ſtedfaſtly on him, & turning her ſpæches to her daughter, ſayd. Egiſena, I perceaue now that which I alwaies feared is come to paſſe, concerning the loue betwæne you and this our new Knight, which ſince I perceaue to be true, and that to ſtriue againe deſtenie is bwteleſſe, I both will and commaunde you, on paine of incurring my diſpleaſure, and by the natural loue you ought to beare me, I coniure you, not to conceale, but to make knowne vnto me, whether there be any ſuch loue-liking betwæne you, as outward ſhowes ſæme to make manifeſt: which if there be, I will ſæke ſome meanes to wo2ke both your contents, which will be a cauſe to d2awe this Gentleman, the ſoner againe vnto this our Court.

The P2inceſſe that had already bæne inſtructed in her mothers d2ift, and being likewiſe thereunto of her ſelfe very willing, dying her chækes with her maidenly bluſh, made her this aunſwere. Moſt gracious P2inceſſe and louing mother, I doe not well knowe whereunto theſe your ſpæches may intend, conſidering that theſe vaine toyes of loue, as yet I was neuer acquainted with, but yet thus much I muſt nædes confeſſe, that the liking which I haue alwaies had to this Gentleman of the Fo2reſt, p2oceeded as I haue ſtill thought, from the naturall loue of a ſiſter towards her b2other: and ſince the knowing of the contrary, hath continued, o2 I may ſay, b2ed a greater liking then to any other whatſoeuer: but not in ſuch ſo2t, as by making choiſe of him, either to diſpleaſe you o2 my father.

The Knight being as ioyfull as might be, to heare them in theſe tearmes: fo2 howſoeuer darkly ſhe ſpake, yet loue had ſo ſharpned his wits, ỹ he geſſed very nære their meaning, and comming to the P2inceſſe kiſſed her hands fo2 thoſe vnſæne kindneſſes, deſiring her in all humility, to ac-

cept

cept him as her humble ſeruant, and faithfull knight: in token whereof ſhe would beſtow ſome thing on him, which in all his aduentures might put him in minde of her excellency, although her kind curteſies were already, ſo ſetled in his hart, as it was for euer impoſſible to bée worne out.

Farther would he haue proceéded, but that the Squire earneſt of his Miſtriſſes charge, ſent vp to haſtē him away, which both the Dutches, and her daughter vnwilling to yéeld vnto, at laſt conſented.

Egiſena for a fauor deliuered him a faire Diamond, which alwaies ſhe worne on her finger. Thus taking his leaue of them, beeing accompanied with the Prince Iago, and diuers other noble men, he was conuaied vnto the Sea-ſide, where they found his ſhip ready prouided, & hauing winde at will, were ready to ſet ſaile. There he toke his leaue of the Prince, and others his friends, imbracing one another with ſuch ſhowes of ſorrowe, that cauſed the whole company and beholders, to dew their chéekes with teares. The Prince Iago many times intreating to accompanie him in his voyage, regarding more his company then his fathers diſpleaſure. But hee hauing determined a longer voyage in his minde: then ſuddenly to returne, would by no meanes conſent vnto the Princes requeſt. Thus at length, as each thing hath his time and end, ſéeing no intreaty would ſerue, hee committed him to the tuition of the almighty God, deſiring his proſperous and ſpéedie returne.

CHAP. II.

How the Gentleman of the Forrest, sayling towards *Ireland*, landed in *Northwales*, where he fought with a huge Monster, and what was the successe thereof.

THE Gentleman of the Forrest, beeing aboorde, and hauing taken his leaue of the Prince, and the rest of his friends, they set saile, hauing the wind fayre, and the Seas calme, euen as if Neptune had roused vp himselfe to welcome some déere friend, the Dolphins, Porpises, and other strange fishes, playing aboue the waters round about the Shippe, as béeing sent of purpose to shewe pleasure to the passengers: whereat our new Knight tooke no small content. Thus passing away the time, somewhiles in beholding the fishes, and other sea sights, and in pleasant and merry talke with the Pilot, and Maister of the Ship, concerning the customes and maners of the Seas, they sayled by the space of eyght dayes, with a prosperous and large wind, when towards the euening, the Maister looking abroad, to sée whether he could discerne any land, happened to sée in the West north west, a small clowde, rising in manner of a mans hand, which the more he beheld, the blacker still it séemed, which caused him to doubt some insuing storme: therefore willing his company to take in their top sayles, and also to vnlace theyr drablets and bonnets, determining to try with theyr Cosses onely. Scarce had they obeyed halfe his commaundement, when the Sky béeing before very cléere, began to ouercast, and the winds to blow in such sort, that in lesse space then an houre, the Seas were growne so outragious, that it séemed euery billow straue one with the other, which should first boord their distressed burthen: the boat-swaine and his fellowes, indeuouring with all theyr might, to take in that little saile which they bare, and although it were but their cosses, yet could they not doe it without great danger & paine.

Others

Others found themſelues buſied in powping and caſting forth the water, each man imploying his beſt help for their liues ayde. And the Prince, although vnskilfull, yet laboring as hard as any of the reſt, ſometimes taking his turne at the pumpe, ſometimes to lift ouer-board ſuch thinges, as might any waies be a hinderance, to the more light working of their ſhippe on the Seas: ſo that his labour was profitable two waies, the one of it ſelfe, wherein he did asmuch good as any man, the other his example, which cauſed euery one to be the more willing to performe their labor. Thus continued the ſtorme for the ſpace of two daies, to the great diſcomfort of all the company, but eſpecially of the Knight, who being ouertrauailed with labour, and his bodie not being to-fore vſed vnto the Sea, repaired into his Cabin, and caſting himſelfe on his bed, hoping to take ſome eaſement to his reſtleſſe body: but ſleepe, the comforter of thoſe that are weary, yelded him ſmall relicfe, for no ſoner were his eyes cloſed, but that the memory of the Princeſſe Egiſenas beauty repreſented it ſelfe vnto him: then would he conſider with himſelfe the likelihood of his obtaining her, as the great fauor which both the Duke her father alwaies ſhewed vnto him, and the kinde ſpeeches at their laſt farwell, as alſo the vowed loue betwixt himſelfe, & the Prince her Brother, which ſeemed to promiſe vnto him an aſſured obtayning. But on the contrary ſide, he would obiect his owne vnworthines, as being but peraduenture of baſe or meane Parentage, then the great & mighty Princes which were deſirous of her loue: and laſt and not leaſt, that his abſence, (as oft times it doth) in her likewiſe might breed forgetfulnes.

Thus reuoluing many things in his mind, hee determined, if God ſo pleaſed, after his enterprize againſt Adreſto ended, hee would trauell into Denmarke, hoping there to learne ſomewhat concerning his eſtate, or elſe peraduenture to trauel along with the Squire & Adreſto into Spaine, where he doubted not but that Adriano ſhould reſolue him of that doubt. In this manner paſſed hee away moſt part

of the night, till towards the morning, Morpheus pitying his reſtleſſe eſtate, cloſed his eyes, cauſing him to inioy a ſhort ſlumber. But long he had not ſlept, before ẏ hee was awaked by a ioyfull cry, made by the whole company, vpon the ſight of Land: but the wind being come to ẏ North ward, they were forced to put in for a harbor, called at this day Milford-hauen, where comming aſhore, they determined to reſt themſelues, and prouide ſuch neceſſaries as they wanted, againſt the winde ſhould ſerue for Ireland, which from thence was but a ſhort cut.

The next day, the Gentleman of the Forreſt being (as is before ſaid) weary of the Sea, determined to goe recreate himſelfe aſhore, wherefore taking his horſe and armor, accompanied onely with his Squire, he rode forth to viewe the Country, which he found to be indifferent fruitfull and pleaſant, but could ſee very few or no Inhabitants, which cauſed him not a little to meruaile: thus rode he on ẏ ſpace of two leagues, beholding many goodly ſtreames, & pleaſant ſhadowes, the delight wherof, cauſed the way to ſeeme very ſhort. At length, comming to a ſmall Riuers ſide, hee alighted to reſt himſelfe, and deliuering his horſe to his Squire, hee layde himſelfe downe at the foote of a ſtatelie Beech tree, whoſe thicke branches were a ſhelter vnto him from the piercing heate of Phœbus golden rayes, where he was quickly ſnid aſleepe, with the chirping tunes of pleaſant birds, and bubling noyſe of the ſoft-glyding ſtreame. Long had hee not reſted in this pleaſant place, before ſuch time as he was wakened by a pittifull out-cry, and ſtarting vp halfe amazed, he beheld a moſt huge and mighty Monſter, in forme ſomewhat bigger then a Cammell, his head and face not much vnlike a man, his mouth very large, as about a yard in wideneſs, his teeth vpwards of a foote long, his breaſt and foreſeete, much like to a Lyon, his backe large and long, and for his hinder parts they were like vnto a Beare: all his body being thicke ſet with briſtles, ſo hard as it was vnpoſſible for any ſword to pierce his ſkin. Which at the firſt ſight cauſed him to ſtand ſome what amazed

mazed, till perceiuing the Monſter almoſt to haue ouertaken his Squire, whom he purſued to haue deuoured, hee clapt on his Helme, and taking his Launce in his hand, he ranne to ſuccour him, and comming néere vnto him, ſmote the Monſter ſuch a blow, as well might haue ouerthrowne a good Knight, but to him it did no harme at all, which cauſed him greatly to doubt the iſſue of their conflict: the beaſt feeling himſelfe ſtriken behind, left the purſute of the ſquire, and turned about to the Knight, thinking to haue deuoured him, and at the firſt layd hold on his ſhield with his two fore-feete, and with his mouth ſeaſed on his Helme, preſſing the ſame with his long teeth, to the no ſmall doubt and aſtoniſhment of the Knight, but as good hap was, he might then thanke haſt, for in claſping on his Helme he had forgotten to faſten it, which was an occaſion, that at the firſt pul it came from his head, which otherwiſe would haue pierced his braines. This hapned not a little to the aduantage of the Knight, who although his head were vnarmed, yet that want of Armor ſo armed the Monſters teeth, that for his life he could not cléere himſelfe thereof. Which gaue the Knight occaſion to make a full thruſt at his breaſt, where the ſkin béeing not ſo hard as in the other parts of his bodie, gaue entrance to his truſtie blade, which pierced ſo déepe, that it cauſed great abundance of blode to follow after it: which the beaſt perceiuing, gaue a loude cry, and withall let goe his ſhield, and take holde on his left ſhoulder, giuing him ſo kind a ſalutation with his ſharp nayles, that he brought away the armor and fleſh, hard to the bone, receiuing in the meane time a ſound blow on the deformed head, which cauſed him to réele backwards. But his ſkin was ſo hard, that it pierced no more then if hee had ſtriken vppon an Anuile of ſteele. Thus continued they a great while, the Monſter ſtill aſſailing, and he auoyding, watching his beſt aduantage to make thruſts, ſéeing blowes did nothing at all auaile. At length, béeing weary, and ſomething fainting by reaſon of his hurt, hee gaue backe a little to refreſh himſelfe, which the Monſter perceiuing, lay

downe,

downe, and with his clawes ſought meanes to cléere himſelfe of the Helme which hung faſt in his téeth, but before he was able to frée himſelfe thereof, the Knight who ſlacked not to take the leaſt aduantage that might be, gaue him ſo ſore a hurt in the belly, that it cauſed both his blod & guts to iſſue out together, which the Monſter féeling, and ſtriuing to recouer himſelfe on his féete, ſtrained ſo much, that hee cauſed his helliſh ſoule to depart from his damned body.

The Knight ſéeing himſelfe Victor, kneéled downe immediatly on the ground, rendring praiſe and thanks to the almighty GOD, for his proſperous and happy ſucceſſe in this his firſt enterpriſe. Then his Squire comming vnto him, he made haſt to bind vp his wounds, and to depart towards his Ship, where hee might with more eaſe & leſſe danger, be cured of his hurts, which grieued him not a little, eſpecially ỳ in his left ſhoulder. But before ſuch time as they were fully ready to depart, there came vnto them an old man, clothed like a Hermite, his head and beard being as white as milke, bearing in one hand a ſmall viole of water, and in the other a boxe of oyntment, and when hee came vnto them, he ſaluted them very curtiouſly, telling the Knight, that of long time he had expected his comming into that diſtreſſed place.

The Knight as curteouſly regréeted him, & afterwards demaunded, if he knew any place where he might be cured of ſome ſmall wounds which he had receiued, to which the Hermite replied, that within leſſe then halfe a league he had a ſmall Cell, whether if it pleaſed him to goe, he would not doubt but within few dayes to cure him: in ỳ meane time, he would a little waſh and annoint the ſame, with ſuch water and oyntment, as hee had for the ſame purpoſe brought with him, the Knight glad hereof, gaue him harty thanks, and hauing had his wounds dreſt, departed with him towards his Cell, where his wounds were cured, as hereafter you ſhall heare, with the occaſion of the Monſters breeding in that place. In the meane time, wee will returne to ſpeake ſomewhat of the Lord of Menew and Sir Henault,

whom

whom the former part of of this hiſtory, left remaining in the Court of Fraunce, in ỹ company of the Engliſh Prince, and diuers other Noblemen.

CHAP. III.

How Sir *Henault*, and the Lord of *Menew*, departed from the Court of *Fraunce*, and arriued in *Holland*, where they heard of the aduenture of *Corneu*: and how they were both taken priſoners.

AFter Prince Edward had ouercome ỹ Duke of Orleance, and continued the defence of the Princeſſe Emelias beauty, to his great honor and renowne, hee remained a while in the French Court greatly feaſted: where for a time he ſtayed with him the two noble Danes, the Lord of Menew, and Sir Henault, intertaining them with great familiaritie and kindneſſe. But being at length weary of idleneſſe, and deſirous to follow after their queſt: they departed towards Belgica, being earneſtly intreated by the Engliſh Prince to haue accompaned him into England. Thus departed they onwards on their iourny, ſtill making dilligent inquiry after their king, of whom, nor of Sir Gwaltero they could learne any certainty. In this manner rode they together, through moſt part of Fraunce, leauing behind them in all places, a famous memoriall of their vertuous acts: which cauſed their names to bee ſpred farre and neere. But at length, paſſing the ſpacious kingdome of Fraunce, they arriued in the vnfortunate Dukedome of Holland: infortunate in regard of ỹ many vilde cuſtomes erected, by the tirrany of their vngodly Duke: as is in the firſt part of this Hiſtory declared.

Scarce were they entred one whole daies iourny within this prouince, before that Fame, the Herault of reports, had brought vnto their eares, the cuſtome of the Caſtle of Corneu, with the many famous exploits there exerciſed, with the innumerable number of Knights, which had there

loſt themſelues: among whom there was one Knight for his exceeding valor, farre famouſed aboue the reſt, who by the deſcription of body and Armes which he bare, they preſently imagined to be the Lord Gualtero.

Wherefore determining either to recouer him, or loſe themſelues, they ſet on thetherwards, where the nert morning they arriued ſo me two houres before that Phœbus vntired ſteedes, with their neuer reſting Chariot, had attained the mid heauens: and comming within the view of the Caſtle, the ſtrength thereof ſtrake a ſudden amazednelle in them: but conſidering the cauſe of their comming, was to deliuer him whom they intirely loued, and alſo that to a valiant hart, nothing ſhould ſeeme difficult, and withal, the harder the enterprize, the more is the honor obtained by the victor: they determined rather to die, then to returne not making triall of the aduenture being ſo nere, which would be for euer a great dishonor vnto thē. The Lord of Menew deſiring to make the firſt triall, whereunto Sir Henault willingly conſented, hoping that if hee were ouercome, his honor in obtaining the victory would be the greater.

Thus being agreed, the Lord of Menew went preſently vnto the ſhield, giuing it ſuch a blow that he cleft it in two in the midſt, which being ſeene by thoſe that garded the bridge, immediately one of them arming himſelfe, came forth mounted on a mighty ſteede, of a browne bay colour, with a little white ſtarre in the forehead, and one white foote: and comming with an eaſie trot vnto the Lord of Menew, demaunded of him wherefore he ſought, and what was the occaſion of his ſo outragious ſtriking of the ſhield. The Lord of Menew aunſwered, that his comming thether was to ſeeke for a Knight, which bare in his ſhield two Lions rampant ſable, in a feeld argent, who as he vnderſtood, had beene by treaſon ſubdued and impriſoned within that Caſtle, and for the ſtriking of the ſhield, he liſted not to giue him any other reaſon, then that he hoped with y ſame Launce, to pierce both his ſhield and his hart. The other replied, that ſuch a Knight indeede was there

impriſoned,

impriſoned, whoſe hauty hart, cauſed him attempt that which he could not accompliſh: in purſuing whereof, by force and not by treaſon he was vanquiſhed, and according to the cuſtome of their Caſtle, made forfeiture of his life, but that for his valloꝛ, they were contented hee ſhould a while liue to helpe to ſtrengthen their gard, if hee could thereto be wonne. Then turning about his horſe, they both prepared to fetch their carrere: and placing their ſtaues in their reſts, they met together ſo rudely, that the Knight of the bridge was ſent to meaſure his length on the ground, being mortally wounded with a ſplinter of the Launce in the viſage, the Lord of Menew likewiſe, beeing ſo ſore ſhaken with y incounter, as he had much to doe to kepe his ſaddle: then preſently came forth other two Knights, well armed, and mounted, crying to him to prepare himſelfe to incounter them: which he preſently did, and meeting together, ſtrake one of them ſo ſtronge a blow, that miſſing toward it with his ſhield, his Launce paſſed cleane through his body: but the other Knight, breaking his Launce in the midſt of his ſhield, cauſed him to tumble ouer his horſe taile, but it was not long before ſuch time as he had recouered his feete, his Squire beeing ready with the horſe of the firſt Knight, on which he preſently mounted, and drawing forth his ſword, was preſently ready to aſſault the other, who ſeeing him diſmounted, made no great haſt, but with baine glorious brauery, paſſed on his carrere, when turning about and perceauing him to bee remounted, drew forth his ſword, ſaying, Sir Knight, well may you thanke your Squire for ſo quicke puruaping of a new horſe for you, but I feare me hee ſhall but little ſtede you againſt the force of my arme, which hath once already ſent you to meaſure your loutiſh length vpon the ground.

The Lord of Menew, being madded with rage, ſtayed not to aunſwere him with words, but with his ſword lent him ſo friendly a blow, that cauſed him to bend his head euen to his breſt: but quickly recouering himſelfe againe, he ſtrake the other ſuch a blow, that had hee not warded the

ſame with his ſhield, he had gone nére to haue cleft his head in two: thus continued they a while, ſometimes the one, ſometimes the other ſéeming to haue the better, Fortune ſo equally guiding the ballance, that it was hard to iudge, whether ſide ſhould obtaine victory. At laſt, the Lord of Menew, imagining with himſelfe that to be long in conquering, would be a cauſe that himſelfe in the end ſhould be ouercome, determined either to obtaine a ſpéedy conqueſt, or a ſpéedy death: wherefore, uniting all his forces together, and raiſing himſelfe in his ſtirrups, hee gaue his enemie ſuch a recombendibus on the head, that the ſtéele being of too weake a force to reſiſt y weight thereof, gaue free paſſage to the ſword, which found a ready way to his braines, cauſing him to fall as dead as a herring vnto the ground.

But before he could haue any ſpace to reſt himſelfe, or almoſt to breath, came foorth other two, charging him both at once, and he as gallantly aunſwered their charge, receauing both their ſtaues vppon his ſhield, which cauſed his horſe a little to ſtagger backwards, but as they paſſed by, their Launces being broke, he gaue one of them ſo ſound a ſtroke on the ſide of the head, before hee loked for any ſuch matter, that he left him but halfe a face to court his Miſtris withall: then prouiding to incounter the other, betwixt whom there paſſed a fierce and bloody conflict, but in the end the victory remained vnto the Lord of Menew, who although hee were grieuouſly wounded, yet his hart being not a whit feared or any way diſmaied, went forwards vnto the bridge, whether Sir Henault likewiſe came, perſwading him to giue ouer the enterpriſe to him, conſidering he was ſo ſore hurt, but he that neuer knew what feare was, could not be ſo lightly perſwaded, wherefore deſiring Sir Henault, if he were ouercome to do his beſt, he made choice of ſuch parts of armes as he wanted, and taking a ſtronge Launce, he went forwards towards the end of the bridge, where he was incountred by two of the fiue Knights that kept the ſame, betwixt whom there was a long and dangerous

gerous conflict, but in the end, through faintneſſe and great loſſe of blood, the Lord of Menew ſtriking a full blow at one of them, ſent himſelfe after to the ground, his legges being no longer able to ſuſtaine the weight of his body, yéelding thereby the victory to them, who were not able long to inioy the ſame: for the one of them euen as he fell, being in as weake eſtate, ſtrooke likewiſe at him, and miſſing his blow, ſent the whole burthen of his body to imbrace him in death, whom in life he had perſued ſo deadly. The other likewiſe being in little better ſtate, ſéeing his cõpanion fall, thought to helpe him, and ſtooping downe to lift him vp, fell himſelfe likewiſe into a traunce.

Sir Henault fearing leaſt his companion had béen ſlaine, went preſently to haue taken vp his body, but was hindred by the other three Knights: who all at once aſſaulted him, and being afoote in like ſort as he was, there begonne a bloody, though vnequall combat, each party ſéeking to ouercome. Thus fought they a long time, giuing and receauing many wounds: Sir Henault giuing ſuch blowes, as well made ſhow he meant to ſell his liberty or life at a déere rate: ſo long they fought, that at length two of them fell dead at his féete, the other ſéeing his fellowes ſlaine, thought it more for his liues ſafety to truſt to his legges then his hands, ſo that turning his backe he ranne towards the Caſtle, from whence preſently iſſued, fiue other Knights armed, putting themſelues betwéene Sir Henault, and the runne-away.

Héere againe begonne a more fierce conflict then the former, by reaſon they were fiue hardy approued Knights. and his former battaile hauing ſerued, but as whetting of his courage, cauſed him to lay on ſuch blowes, that in ſhort time he had ſent two of their ſoules to ſéeke paſſage at Charons ferry: himſelfe and the other three being greatly wearied, ſtoode ſtill a while to reſt themſelues: when Sir Henault conſidering with himſelfe the cauſe of his fighting, as to releaſe his noble friend Gualtero, and alſo to be reuenged for the death of the Lord of Menew, hee was ſo repleat

with ire, & running vpon them as a man inraged, he ſtroke one of them ſuch a blow, as he ſeuered his head from his ſhoulders, then laying on at the other two ſuch mighty blowes, that hee forced them in the end to yeld vp their ſoules, as a ſacrifice to his ſword: which being ended, hee himſelfe being ouer trauelled, and hauing loſt great aboundance of blod, ſate himſelfe downe on a ſtone, where hee had not long ſitten before he fel into a ſwound, which being ſeene by the Knights of the Caſtle, they came forth and tooke both him, and the body of the Lord of Menew, with the reſt of whom there was any hope of recouery, and carried them into the Caſtle, where in reſpect of their valor, they cauſed to be carefully attended, and their wounds to be cured: perſwading them in the meane time to bee partners wth them, in garding this their lewd cuſtome. Which when they beeing well, refuſed, were immediatly put downe into the priſon, where the King and Gualtero remained.

CHAP. IIII.

Howe the Hermite declared vnto the Knight, the diſcourſe of the Monſter, & afterwards beeing cured of his wounds, was brought vnto an old Chappell, where hee gained an excellent Armour, beeing ſometimes the Armor of the famous Prince *Lionell*.

THE Gentleman of the Forreſt, beeing brought by the Hermit and his Squire vnto the Hermitage, he was forthwith diſarmed, and layd on a ſilly couch, on which the olde Hermit vſed to lie, and beeing carefully looked vnto, and attended on by the Hermit, within 3. dayes hee was indifferently well recouered, and ſitting vp in his bed, he deſired the old man to declare vnto him, as hee before had promiſed, the diſcourſe of the Monſter which hee had killed.

The

The old man glad to ſée him ſo well recouered, and alſo deſirous to pleaſure him in any thing he could, began thus. Moſt worthy Knight, not long ſince there was remaining in this Country, a moſt vile and wicked Gouernour, named Querenus, a man for the deteſtable wickednes which he liued in, hated both of God and man, for what virgin or beautifull wife was there in this Country, which if hee liked, but he would force to accompliſh his luſtfull appetite: yea to ſuch a height of euill was he growne, that he neither feared God nor man, knowing no heauen but his worldlie pleaſures, nor fearing no other hell but the miſery of this life, the which hee continued to the mortall griefe of all his ſubiects: who in the end, béeing wearied and ouerburthened in this intollerable miſerie, choſe rather to end theyr liues ſpeedily, then continually to be tormented by this blod-thirſtie Tyrant. Wherefore gathering themſelues together, they made head againſt the Tyrant, and after a long warre, they preuailed ſo againſt him, that he was forced ſecretly to abandon his Country, and béeing onely accompanied with two men, taking a ſmall boate, which hée found ready prouided, fled away to the Sea, where hauing bèen ſome fiue dayes, at laſt was put a ſhore in an Iland, not farre diſtant hence, where in times paſt, the excellent and famous Magitian Bardus ſometimes dwelt, where being landed, and calling to minde the eſtate which hee now was brought into, determined there to take vp his habitation, and to preuent both himſelfe and his company, from any hope or deſire to eſcape, immediatly ſuncke the boate wherein they had eſcaped, and afterward, béeing diligently ſearching in a certaine Caue, hapned to find diuers bookes of Magicke, which he toke great delight in, minding to ſtudie and practiſe the ſame. And ſo mightily profited he therein, that in very ſhort time he grew very expert in the ſame: and at length, growing old, and calling to mind his former life paſt, and conſidering the wrong which hee thought he had ſuſtained by his ſubiects, it cauſed him to determine how to be reuenged on them, which in this ſort he brought

to

to paſſe.

There is in the weſtermoſt parts of America, a ſmall Iland very fruitfull, but whether by nature, or by ſome other accident, or determination of Fortune, onely inhabited by diuers huge and execrable Monſters, there hence by his deuiliſh Art, did this vngodly Querenus cauſe to be brought the huge monſter, which you to your endleſſe honour haue ſo valiantly ſlaine: and placing him here, by that meanes thought fully to be reuenged, where by the ſpace of twenty yeeres hee hath now remained, to the vtter ruine and deſtruction of this Country, laying it vtterly waſt and deſolate, hauing deuoured ſo many Chriſtian bodies, that it grieues my very ſoule to thinke of, no man before this your comming, euer daring to aduenture himſelfe againſt him, although many times there hath many great companies aſſembled themſelues, to haue aſſailed him, but comming into his preſence, the very ſight of him hath put them in ſuch a feare, as not able to indure, they haue bin forced to turne their backs and flie, truſting more to their heeles then their hands, many of them being not able to flie ſo faſt as their fellowes, where forced to ſtay behind, & remaine as foode vnto the vgly Monſter: but now (God be thanked) by your noble proweſſe, brought vnto his end.

The Prince receiued no ſmall admiration heereat, wondering that a man ſhould be ſo wicked, as to reuenge his wrong by ſo hatefull a meanes. But to bring him out of this his imaginations, the Hermit would diſcourſe with him of diuers other matters, ſometimes of one matter, and then of another. And now the Knight hauing remained by the ſpace of tenne dayes in the Hermitage, he was indifferent wel recouered, during which time he was many times viſited by his owne company, and alſo by the inhabitants of the Country, which came daily to ſee him. For by this time had Fame ſo ſpred abroade his hautie exployt, that there came many from diuers Countries adioyning, offering themſelues, and all that they had to be at his diſpoſition: but he being not minded to ſtay there longer then that

his

his wounds were throughly whole, gaue them thankes for their kind proffer, telling them ẏ hee could not accept of the the ſame, by reaſon he was to follow a certaine earneſt aduenture which he was in queſt of. Thus paſſing away the time vntill he was fully whole, the day before he meant to depart towards his ſhip, the old Hermit being in talk with him, told him of a certaine aduenture not farre of, which in his younger yeeres, he did remember to haue ſeene many to make tryall thereof, but neuer heard of any to haue attained the accompliſhment of the ſame.

The Knight beeing deſirous to know the ſame, deſired the Hermit to declare it vnto him, which he did in this maner. Not far hence (quoth he) there ſtandeth a ſmall Chappell, ſituate at the foote of an hill, nowe altogether ouergrowne with briers and buſhes, by reaſon of the Monſters crueltie, which lately to your eternall renowne, you ſo famouſly haue vanquiſhed and ſlaine: in former time this Chappell was dedicated to the diuine ſeruice of GOD, by the renowned King Elinus, Prince of the Brittons, in the time that the Romans ruled heere with their mighty Legions, and afterwards beautified and adorned by ẏ famous Prince Lionell his ſonne, with many ſumptious and coſtlie ornaments. In the midſt of which a little before his death, he cauſed his owne Armor, being one of the beſt in ẏ world, and with which hee had accompliſhed many excellent atchieuements, to be hanged vp there, to be kept for his eternall memory. Where it remained a great while vntouched of any, onely through the priuiledge of the place, vntill the time of the famous Arthur, at which time ẏ excellent Magitian Merlin knowing that there would be many, which not reſpecting the ſinne of ſacrilledge, would not ſtick to take away ſo precious a Jewell as was the ſame, caſt foorthwith ſo mighty an inchauntment on the Armor, that none but ſuch a one, who in his time ſhould excell all others, both in valour, curteſie and loyaltie, ſhould be able to take downe the ſame.

Now not long after, according to his imagination it fell

out, for many being deſirous to obtaine ſo good an Armor, made tryall to take the ſame away, but hetherunto there was no man ſo hardy, as once to moue it. Wherfore I am fully perſwaded, that it was ordained onely for you, in whom I may boldly ſay, remaines the greateſt valor and magnanimitie, that may be poſſible in any Knight now liuing, as already your deedes haue manifeſted. The prince thanking him for his vndeſerued prayſes, attributing them rather to his loue and affection towards him, then for any merrite he knew in himſelfe worthy the leaſt of them: with all deſiring the good olde man, to accompany him thether, where he would likewiſe make triall of his fortune, as many others had done before him, albeit he had no hope to attaine that, which ſo many good Knights had failed of.

Thus departing from the Hermitage, they went the next way towards the Chappell, where they arriued about the time they were wont to ſing their euening Maſſe there, at their comming they found it deſolate, the dores & windowes ouer-growne with briers and nettles, the walls ruinous, and all things elſe growne into decay, which cauſed not onely the auncient Hermit, but alſo the whole company to ſhed teares from theyr eyes. Then at the requeſt of the Prince, the Hermit ſang Euen ſong vnto them, which had not bin heard there in twenty yeeres before.

Theyr prayers being ended, they went vp in a ſmall Ile of the Chappell, where hung the foreſaid Armor, with diuers other Reliques, which hee beheld, with a great deſire to inioy the ſame: then lifting vp his eyes to heauen, imploring God to be his ayde, he ſtretched forth his hand to take them downe from their place, which he [illegible] without any paine at all, to the no ſmall admiration [illegible] beholders. Then pulling of his owne Armor, he armed himſelfe with this which he had gotten, which fitted him ſo well, as if it purpoſely had beene made for him. The Armor was of a greene cullour, repreſenting a fielde full of Orenge trees bearing fruite, ſome fallen, ſome ripe as ready to fall, and ſome againe greene, as but now budding, which wrought

ſuch

ſuch a content vnto the Princes minde, as not any thing might be greater. The ſhield alſo he toke on his arme, and although it was imperſable, yet was it framed of ſuch a ſubſtance, that it was as light as any ordinary ſhield, the deuice being in a fielde Verte, three Lyons rampant, or ſignifying indeede, three Lyons which the famous Lyonell ſlew in the Kingdome of Spayne, as you may reade in that Hiſtory, and from which likewiſe hee was called Lyon-queller.

CHAP. V.

How the Prince *Euordanus* departing out of *Walles*, arriued in *Ireland*, naming himſelfe *the Knight of the Lyons*, and what hapned vnto him on his way towards *Dublin*.

THe Prince hauing throughly recouered him ſelfe of his wounds which he receiued of the Monſter, and having gained the Armor and ſhielde of the famous Lionell, departed towards ỹ harbor of Milford, taking his leaue of the courtious Hermite, and the reſt of the inhabitants of the Country: many of whome were deſirous to haue kept him company, but he would not in any wiſe accept thereof. And now being come vnto the harbor, he found his ſhippe in a readineſſe, and hauing the wind indifferent faire, they ſet ſaile towards Ireland, where the next day they arriued in the famous Riuer of Waterford: where being come to an ancor, they went on ſhore to view the pleaſantneſſe of the Country.

Which at that time was indifferent delightfull, by reaſon of the many pleaſant ſprings, which deſcended from the Mountaines, ranning with their rumbling noiſe a moſt delightfull harmony. The next day the Prince accompanied only with his owne Squire, and the Squire of Lenarda, whom hee willed in any wiſe not to make him knowne, otherwiſe thenby the name of the Knight of the Lions. Departed towards the Citty of Dublin, whereas Adreſto remained,

mained, in the delightfull companie of Valeria, for ſo was the Merchants daughter named, of whom he was ſo greatly enamored, and for whoſe ſake he accompliſhed diuers and ſundry combats, defending her beauty againſt al commers, to his no ſmall fame and renowne: for that within the ſpace of two yeares he had ouer-come and ſubdued, aboue a thouſand Knights, not at any time himſelfe hauing receaued the foyle.

Thetherwards rode the Knight of the Lyons, coaſting ouer Mountaines and Vallies: the firſt day not happning on any aduenture worth the recitall. The nert day in the morning, a little after hee was departed from the place whereas they had line that night, there met him a Damſell, mounted on a ſmall hackny, making meruailous haſt, and comming vnto him, caſting her ſelfe from her horſe to the ground, ſpake in this manner. Moſt courtious and baliant Knight, for ſo much my minde aſſureth you to bee: let the humble petition of the moſt diſtreſſed Damſell in the world, moue your noble hart to pittie and relieue this my cruell diſaſter, which without the ayde of you or ſome other baliant Knight is now vncurable, wherefore by your ſolemne oath of Knight-hood, by which you are bound to defend all diſtreſſed perſons, eſpecially Ladies and Damſels, and alſo by her whom you loue moſt, I coniure you, to ayde and defend me in a moſt right and iuſt quarrell.

The Knight beholding her wofull geſture, with her ſolemne coniurations, which ſhe vttered with ſuch abundance of ſighes, and teares flowing downe from the fountaines of her eyes, as might haue moued the hardeſt hart to relent, cauſed her to ſtand vp, and willed her to declare the effect and cauſe of this her complaint, aſſuring her, that if her cauſe were correſpondent to her ſorrowes, ſhe had met with one who would either loſe his life, or worke her content. The Damſell being comforted with this his promiſe, roſe vp from the ground, and wiping the teares from her eyes, began thus. Moſt worthy Knight, know that not paſſing fiue leagues hence, there dwelt ſometimes a famous

mous & valiant Knight, who in the flowre of his age proued ſtill fortunate in all his enterpriſes, eſpecially in his loue towards a noble Dame of this Country, named Molenda, whom at length by the conſent of theyr friends hee inioyed in lawfull marriage, and liued together a long time in great ioy and content: and in their latter yéeres GOD bleſſed them with a faire daughter, whom they named Mocella, happy in that ſhee was diſcended from ſo vertuous Parents, but afterward moſt infortunate, as by the proceſſe of my ſpéeches you ſhall vnderſtand. For Eugenius, (for ſo was the auncient Knight my father called) béeing ſtriken in yéeres, & hauing no more children but my ſelfe, who then had attained vnto the age of twelue yéeres, my Father (as I haue before ſayd) béeing ſtriken in age, and alſo grieuouſly vexed with an extreame malady, called vnto him my mother and my ſelfe, and after ſome fatherly exhortations to me giuen, he turned vnto my mother & ſayd.

My déere and moſt beloued Molenda, knowing that my fatall time is at hand, and that death, who ſpareth no man, hath already ſeaſed on my body, I haue thought good before my death, to recommend this our daughter vnto your moſt louing and motherly care, deſiring you in any caſe, not to permit or ſuffer her, béeing come vnto ripeneſſe of yéeres, to match with any of this Prouince, which vnto my ſoule would be moſt grieuous: and ẏ during her nonage, you would ſée her moſt carefully inſtructed in vertue, wherby ſhe may be worthy of this patrimony whereunto ſhee is borne. My father hauing vttered theſe or ſuch like ſpéeches, and finding himſelfe to draw towards his end, imbraced vs both in his armes, and turning about his face, immediatly departed out of this wretched world, leauing vs to bewaile this our croſſe fortunes. Now after wee had ſolemniſed his funerails, and had according to the vſe of thys Country, by the ſpace of one whole yéere, in mournfull attire bewailed his death: it hapned on a time, that my mother béeing deſirous to recreate her ouer-troubled minde, with ſome delightfull pleaſures, deſired a great number of

her neighbours, as well Knights, Ladies, Gentlemen, and Damſels, as alſo others of meaner ſort, to come vnto her Caſtle, where they were all hartily welcome, and worthily feaſted by the ſpace of three dayes, during which ſpace, they paſt away the time with many ſundry diſports, to the content of vs all.

But alas here began the head or ſpring of all my griefe, as by the ſequell of my ſpeeches you ſhall perceiue, for amongſt this company, there was a Knight whoſe liuelihood ioyned with ours, a man indued with rites ſufficient, had the Gods graced him ſo well with vertue and good conditions. This Knight, I ſay, fayning himſelfe to be attached with my beauty, deſired mee of my mother in marriage. But ſhe reſpecting more the riches of the mind, then the worldly wealth of the man, gaue him a flat deniall, alleaging my youth to be ſuch, as was very vnfit for a husband: and that to match a young gerle without a ſetled affection, was the next way to leade her into a life farre worſe then death: for then to be matched where one cannot loue, there is on earth no greater torment.

He taking this deniall in very ill part, departed vnto his owne Caſtle, being not paſſing three leagues of, where he remained awhile, contemplating reuenge in his hart, and deuiſing by what meanes he might accompliſh the ſame, at laſt determined to winne ỹ by force, which by fayre means he could not hope to attaine. And being ſetled in this reſolution, he gathered together the greateſt forces ỹ hee could: and within a month after, no one ſuſpecting ſuch villanie, in the night time moſt traytorouſly aſſaulted our Caſtle, where hauing gotten the poſſeſſion thereof, ſlew all thoſe who made any reſiſtance againſt him. And taking my mother in her Chamber, threatned her with the like crueltie as hee had ſhewed vnto the reſt, if forthwith ſhe did not giue me her woefull daughter, to be his Concubine: for now hauing gotten our poſſeſſions by force, he diſdained to haue me to his wife, which I being in the next roome and hearing, immediatly threw my ſelfe out at a window, where

by

by chance faling to the ground without any great hurt, I found his Palfry ready tide, on which foorthwith I mounted, flying away as faſt as I could, neuer ſtaying in any place, vntill now méeting with you, of whom I hope to receiue helpe and comfort.

Hare ſhe ſtayed her ſpéeches, pouring forth abundance of teares, which cauſed the young Knight greatly to pittie her: vowing vnto her, if that they remained his comming, he would ſo punith theyr deteſtable treaſons, as ſhould be both to her content, and alſo an example to all thoſe, who ſhould afterward attempt the like. And willing her to leade on the way, they rode onwards moſt part of the day, not méeting with any one till euening, about the time that Veſperus appearing in the Weſt, gaue them warning to take vp theyr lodging, which forthwith they did: for comming into a little thicke wood, and the Sky waxing dark, whereby they feared to miſſe theyr way, they layde themſelues downe vnder a thicke tuffe of trées, where after they had refreſhed themſelues, with ſuch viands as his Squire had brought with him, they betoke themſelues to ſléepe, the Prince not ſo much as putting off his Helme, for feare leaſt they might be ſet on in their ſléepe: and hee alſo appointed the two Squires to watch by turne, ſo much did his mind miſdoubt the wickednes of thoſe people, who inhabited thereabouts, giuen onely to rapine and theft.

CHAP. VI.

Howe the Knight of the Lyons ſleeping in a wood, was ſet on by a company of thieues: and after, how hee came to the Caſtle of the wofull Lady *Molenda*, where hee ſlewe the traytor *Calepin*.

THE Knight béeing accompanied with his two Squires, and the Damſell, had ſcarcely ſlept vntill midnight, when his Squire, whoſe turne was to watch, gaue him notice that hee did heare a noyſe not farre off, which hee did iudge

iudge to be of ſome company comming towards them. The Prince, immediatly taking his ſhielde on his arme, & putting himſelfe in a readines, commaunded them to lie ſtill, fayning themſelues to ſleepe, which they did, when preſently they beheld tenne theeues armed with ſwords and other weapons, who comming neere them, conferred amongſt themſelues, whether it were beſt to kill them as they ſlept, or elſe to ſet vpon them, and hauing bound them, to robbe thē of that they had: which when the Knight heard he immediatly ſtart vp, and taking his ſword in his hand, ranne vpon them, where the firſt he met with he ſent to Pluto his kingdome, to giue an account of his wicked life: his fellowes beholding his miſhap, layde on with all theyr forces, vowing to be reuenged for his death, whom ſone after they did accompanie: for the Knight bearing both ſtrong, and alſo well armed with the Armor of Sir Lionell, made no account of theyr blowes, which to him did no more hurt then if they had layd on theyr blowes vppon ſome flintie Rocke. Thus continued the fight by the ſpace of an houre, in which time he had diſpatched fiue of them: the others thinking to ſaue themſelues by flight, were ſtayed by the two Squires, who ſlew one of them out-right, the others falling on theyr knees deſired pardon, which the Knight forthwith granted them, cauſing thē to ſweare to giue ouer that kinde of life, which they did: the one of them being ſomething ſtriken in yéres, betooke himſelfe afterwards to a Hermitage, where hee ſpent the reſt of his life in prayer, and bewailing of his ſinnes, an other intreated him to accept of him as his ſlaue, which the Prince was the more willing to doe, in regard that hee ſhould ſerue him as a guide, during his trauell in that Country, which vnto a ſtranger is very perrilous.

And truly afterwards he did not repent the ſauing of his life, for that he did him good ſeruice, as you ſhall reade in the ſequell of the Hiſtory. After this conflict, the Knight and his company remained all the remnant of the night diſcourſing of many matters, in which the theefe declared vnto him the faſhion of the Country, which vnto the Knight ſeemed

med very ſtrange. Now beautifull Aurora hauing changed her mourning weede, and clad̃e herſelf in her richeſt robes, to welcom her deere beloued bridegroome the ſunne, the Knight of the Lyons with his company mounted on horſebacke, all ſauing his newe entertained ſeruaunt Gillmo, for ſo was the theefe called whom he had receiued into his ſeruice: and taking his neereſt way to the Caſtle of Molenda, they trauelled on vntill it was about nine of ỹ clock, at what time they arriued there, (euen as Callapin hauing rifled the ſame, was ready to depart, cauſing two of his companions to dreg the good old Lady by the hayre, minding to carry her vnto a Caſtle of his, where ſhee ſhould remaine priſoner, vntill ſuch time as ſhee ſhould deliuer her daughter, with the whole inheritance into his cuſtodie,) which when the Knight of the Lyons beheld, he ſet ſpurres vnto his horſe, and hauing almoſt ouertaken them, ſaid, Stay villaines, and declare wherefore you vſe that Ladie in ſuch vile ſort, or elſe you ſhall deerely abide it. Callapin turning about, and ſeeing but one Knight purſuing them, ſayd, I liſt not to declare the cauſe vnto thee, but if thou get thee not packing, my Launce ſhall teach thee the guerdon due for thy ſo much ouer boldnes. Then placing their ſtaues in their reſts, they ranne one againſt the other with all their forces, and meeting together, their incounter was ſo furious, that Callapin was throwne to the ground being verie ſore bruſed with the fall. The other paſſed on halfe aſtoniſhed, as neuer hauing receiued the like buffet. Then turning about his horſe with his ſword drawne, he rode towards Callapin, who by this time had recouered his ſeate, which the Knight of the Lyons perceiuing, diſmounted himſelfe, deliuering his horſe vnto Gillmo. Who by this time was come vnto them: there began a moſt dangerous and fierce fight combat, for Callapin was one of the beſt knights in all Ireland, and knew well how to defend himſelfe, but yet farre vnequall to the other: who purſued him with ſo many huge & weighty blowes, breaking his ſhield and Armor in peeces, that he cauſed the blood to iſſue forth

abundantly: himselfe through the goodnes of his Armour not having receiued any wound, so that it manifestly appeared, which way the victory would bend it selfe: had it not beene that the rest of Callapins company, (who perceiued him almost ouercome) put themselues in his defence: Heere againe the battell began to grow doubtfull, they being eight, and all on horsebacke, whereby they had the far greater aduantage: which the good Knight perceiuing, and seeing there was no way to auoyde this danger but by his owne prowesse, gaue Callapin so sound a blow on the head, that cleauing both Helme and head to the teeth, caused him to fall dead to the ground: and making as if he would haue fled, her came to Gillimo, and mounting himselfe on horsebacke, he incountred one of them, who breaking his staffe on his good shield, was sent besides his saddle to measure his length on the ground, where to make him sure for doing any further harme, Gillimo toke paynes to cut off his head. But now was the other seauen come vnto him, who all at once charged him with their Launces, in such sort, that his horse not being able to indure the incounter, fel vnder him, but sone was hee againe remounted by his Squire, who brought him Callapins horse, then began hee to lay on such blowes, as well he gaue them to vnderstand, y they could not long indure against him, frō some cutting their armes from their bodies, ouerthrowing others to the ground, who neuer could rise againe, for that the two Squires and Gillimo made them sure, by cutting their throats: thus continued the battell two long howres, the Knight of the Lyons neuer hauing leisure to breathe himselfe, so obstinate were they in the seeking of their owne deaths: which by this time fiue of them had gained: the other two, seeing their fellowes all slaine, betoke themselues to flight, hoping thereby to saue their liues, but being pursued by the Knight, they were sone ouertaken, leauing their liues for a satisfaction of their former offences. Which when Molenda perceiued, with her Daughter, who by this time was come vnto her, fell themselues at his feete, and gaue him

most

most hartie thankes for their deliuery, proffering him all that they had, if hee would accept thereof. But hee raysing them from the ground, willed them to render thankes to GOD, who had sent him as a scourge to punish such wicked offenders, as were those whom hee had banquished.

Then taking their way into the Castle, they remained there all that night, where they were feasted by the Mother and the Daughter, who seeing him so young and beautifull, admired how he could be of such force, to effect such deedes as hee had brought to passe: therefore desiring to know what hee was, Molenda beganne in this sort: Most valiant Knight, seeing you will not receiue any thing of vs, whereby we might manifest vnto you the thankfulnes of our mindes, yet I beseech you let vs know vnto whom we are so much bounden, whereby in our prayers we may record this your memorable action. The Knight answered, As for that you demaund, I cannot satisfie you, because I know not mine owne estate, but where I am knowne, I am called the Knight of the Lyons, by reason of these Lyons which I beare on my shield. Farther they would haue questioned with him, but fearing to displease him, they gaue ouer: and hauing brought him vnto his Chamber, they committed him to GOD, where that night, by reason of his extreame wearinesse, and his watching the night before, hee slept very soundly.

Where wee will leaue him awhile, and returne to declare what hapned in the meane time to Prince Edward of England, whom you may remember in the former part of this History, intended to demaund the beautifull Princesse Emilia, of her Father the King of Fraunce.

CHAP. VII.

How the Prince of *England* demaunded *Emilia* of her father in marriage, and of the ſtrange aduenture that hapned in the *French* Court, whereby all the chiefe Knights were forced to forſake the Court.

IT is declared in the firſt part of this hiſtory, how that Prince Edward of England, being in the French Court, where he ouercame the Duke of Orleance, and after maintained the Princeſſe Emilia, to be the beautifullest Lady in the world, of whom hee grew ſo farre inamoured, that hee determined to demaunde her of the King her father. Wherefore one day being in a melancholly humor, walking in a delightfull garden, ioyning to the Pallace to recreate himſelfe, the King likewiſe came thether, being accompanied with one page only, and finding the Prince ſomewhat penſiue, demaunded the cauſe thereof: to which he replied. The cauſe of this my dumpes, in which you ſay I now am in, proceedes partly from your ſelfe, in regard I feare your denyall in a matter, for which I minde to be a ſuter vnto you: which feare driues me into a doubt, whether I were beſt to ſpeake in the ſame, fearing to bee denayd, or elſe conceale the ſame to my ſelfe, which likewiſe may breede a farther danger.

The King a while ſtudying with himſelfe, what the matter might be, at length gaue him this anſwere. Moſt noble Prince, the loue which I beare vnto you is ſuch, that it cauſeth me not to diſſemble with you, wherefore knowe that I cannot chuſe but take theſe your ſpeeches, in very vnkind part, howſoeuer by you ſpoken: for if the matter be reaſonable which you would requeſt, then how farre you wrong mee in doubting my conſent therein, I referre to God only, who knowes the thoughts of my hart. If vnreaſonable, to your ſelfe, who knowes what it is from ones friend to expect thoſe things, which hee cannot well without

out his great preiudice graunt: wherefore declare boldly what it is that troubles your minde, and aſſure your ſelfe, you ſhall finde me willing to ſatiſfie you therein, if it bee not greatly to the preiudice of my honor, and ſtate of this my Kingdome. The Prince hearing this friendly, and to him ioyfull concluſion: replied, that he did greatly thanke his Maieſtie, for that great loue which hee did aſſure him of: wherefore now putting all feare and doubte aſide, hee would declare the ſame vnto him, which was this: that being greatly wounded with the vertues, and beauty of the Princeſſe Emilia his daughter, whom in hart he had vowed to loue, and fearing leaſt he had otherwiſe diſpoſed of her, indeede was the cauſe of his penſiueneſſe.

Which when the King heard, with a ſmiling countenance made him this aunſwere: and is it poſſible, that beautie can cauſe ſuch alteration in you, or elſe that loue can ſo ſoone take poſſeſſion of your hart, as comming frée to this my Court, where you haue ſcarcely remained one month: but indéede your combat with the Duke our Coſin, and after hazarding your ſelfe in the ſame Challenge, did cauſe me, in ſort to imagine, that you were ſomewhat intangled in thoſe nets.

But now to the purpoſe, as ſhe is my daughter, ſo doe I thinke ſhee will not make her choiſe without my conſent, neither I being her father, will force her conſent where ſhe doth not loue, but if by faire meanes ſhee may be wonne héereunto, aſſure your ſelfe, that the houſe of Fraunce, is moſt willing to linke it ſelfe in loue and amitie with the Prince of England, whoſe noble vallour, deſerues to bée highly had in eſtimation.

The Prince for this his kinde graunt, would néedes haue kiſt his royall hands, which the King would not ſuffer him to doe, but imbracing him in his armes, departed immediately into the Pallace, and comming into the Quéenes chamber of preſence, called for the Princeſſe Emilia, and willing all ſaue the Quéene, and her as a boyd the preſence, hee demaunded of her, whether

there were any loue betweene her and the Engliſh Prince: at which demaunde, ſhe dying her Princely cheekes with a maidenly bluſh, and falling on her knees, aunſwered. Moſt gracious father, conſidering that in concealing the truth from you, being therof demaunded, I ſhall not only breake the bounds of duty by being diſobedient, but alſo offende God in making of a lie: know therefore, that ſince the day wherein he ouercame the Duke of Orleance, I haue ſo intangled my ſelfe in his loue, which before being by him ſued vnto I made ſcrone of, that I can finde no way to alter the ſame, but by death only, which rather then it ſhould be to your diſlike, I would willingly indure were it neuere ſo cruell.

The King beeing ioyfull hereat, yet ſeeming to be diſcontented, ſaid: In faith and is it poſſible, that thou moſt fond and foliſh gearle, ſhouldeſt ſo much forget the bounds of dutie and vertue, as without my conſent, ſo to ſettle thy fancie on a ſtranger: but I doubt not but thou wilt as ſone repent thy choiſe, as thou haſt forgotten thy duty in chooſing, for who knowes whether he being a young amorous Prince, hath not made ſome other choiſe already, where then are thy hopes, or what will become of thy loue. The Princeſſe hearing her father in theſe tearmes, knewe not well what aunſwere to make, but at length with teares in her eies, and fetching a deepe ſigh from her hart, ſhe beſought him to conſider the force and power of loue, which was of ſuch might, that who moſt ſought to ſtriue againſt it, was the more cruelly therewith in the end wounded: and that as yet her loue being knowne to none, ſeeing it ſo greatly diſliked his Maieſtie, ſhe would for euer keepe cloſe, although it did coſt her, her life; which ſhe was ſure it would doe, ſeeing it had taken already ſuch deepe roting in her hart. The King ſeeing her conſtancie, & loth to grieue her any farther, tooke her by the arme, & raiſing her from the ground, bid her to be of good comfort, for ſeeing that her affection proceeded from vertue, and not of any wanton or luſtfull appetite, hee did both alowe of it, and yeeld conſent

vnto

vnto the choiſe which ſhe had made, willing her farther to eſteeme of the Prince, as one who not only dearely loued her, but alſo was worthy to be beloued, both for his valloꝛ & magnanimitie of mind, of the greateſt Lady in Chriſtendome.

Thus leauing her not a little comforted, he went to impart the ſame to the Prince, vnto whom this newes was more welcome, then to haue beene made Lord of the greateſt Kingdome of the world. And taking order with ẏ King for the day of their marriage, againſt which time there ſhould be prepared a great Turny, hee alſo ſent ouer into England the Duke of Yorke, to certifie the King his father hereof, which was to him moſt welcome newes, being now greatly ſtriken in yeares. Alſo there were many Heraults ſent foorth to proclaime this great Turny, which ſhould beheld in the Citty of Parris, at the nuptials of the Prince of England, and the beautifull Emelia: againſt which time there came daily, many braue and gallant Knights, from diuers Kingdomes, as well Chriſtians as Saracines: for that the King had graunted by his proclamations, a ſafe conduct for all commers.

Now in this meane time, the Duke of Orleance being throughly recouered of his wounds, which he had receaued againſt Don Edward, and finding that with the loſſe of his honor, he had likewiſe loſt his loue, grew therewith into ſo great rage, that he would haue ſlaine himſelfe, had it not beene for ſome of his ſeruants, who alwaies gaue diligent attendance vnto him: and deuiſing with himſelfe on reuenge, at laſt reſolued by vnknowne trechery, to bring it thus to paſſe. There was in this his Dukedome a great Inchaunter, who with his accurſed ſpells, was able in a manner to pull the ſtarres out of their places: to this man the Duke reſorted, and making him priuie to his intent, deſired him to deuiſe ſome meanes how vnknowne he might be reuenged on the Engliſh Prince. The Inchaunter willing to ſhowe his loue vnto the Duke, immediately deuiſed a meane, how not only to be reuenged on ẏ prince,

but

but also on as many as were wellwillers vnto him: which he did bring to passe in this sort. There was in ỹ kingdom of Fraunce, some tenne leagues from Parris a great Forrest, in which this Inchaunter by his deuilish art, erected a stately Castle inuironed about with high walls, & deepe ditches, so as it seemed one of the strongest, and fairest Castles of the kingdome: likewise he inchaunted it in such sort, that though a thousand Knights had sought for it, yet notwithstanding there should none haue found the same, but such as they thought should not be of such force, as to conquer the gardants, who were two fierce & mighty Gyants, farre exceeding the common stature of others of that kind. Also there was a Knight a kinsman of the Dukes, who being accõpanied with 200 or 300 attendants, alwaies remained herein: the Giants who kept the gard, the one of them was called Brandofell, with him first must those Knights haue to doe, that came to make triall of this aduenture, the other was named Furioll, excelling in strength all the Giants of his time, to him belonged the combat with those Knights, to whom fortune was so fauorable, as to ouercome Brandofell. In this manner hauing prouided for the garde of this inchaunted Castle, they deuised a meane by which to bring the Prince vnto the same, which was in this manner. The Inchaunter Liguſtargo, for so was he called, had a daughter indifferent faire, who in dissimulation was as skilfull, as her father in the art of Magicke, for she had her teares at commaund, and could so well frame her countenance to sorrowe, that there was none but would haue taken her to be very sorrowe it selfe: to her was referred the meanes to seduce the Prince, who comming vnto the Court, with her haire dispersed about her shoulders, her garments rent and torne, and being conducted into the great Hall, she was admired at of euery one, and greatly pitied, for the outward showe of sorrowe, which did seeme so much to afflict her: in this manner being conducted where the King, with many Princes

and

and great Lords were ſitting togethers, ſhee demaunded which was the Engliſh Prince. Who hearing himſelfe named, immediately ſtept forth, demaunding what ſhee would with him: ſhee preſently falling on her knees, fetching many vehement and deepe ſighes, powring forth ſuch aboundance of teares, as a while detained the paſſage of her ſpeech, which cauſed great pitty in all the beholders, but eſpecially in the Prince, who naturally was very pitifull: at length hauing recouered the vſe of her tongue, with a deepe ſigh proceeded in this manner. Moſt worthy and valerous Prince, if the teares of the moſt diſtreſſed and wofulleſt creature in the world, may moue pitty and compaſſion, in your heroyick and noble minde, then let theſe my complaints haue acceſſe vnto your vertuous hart, which I haue heard reported to be ſuch, that cauſeth me rather then vnto any other of theſe noble Knights, to make my complaint, hoping by you to receaue ſome comfort in this my great heauineſſe, which hapned in this manner. Being ſent by the beautifull Dutches Gelnarda Dutches of Strauonia vnto a friend of hers, whoſe fame peraduenture you haue heretofore heard of, called Segando, who now remaines in the Kingdome of Iſland, in the company of a beautifull Damſell, cleane forgetting both my Lady and her loue, which heretofore to him was eſteemed moſt deere, my Lady hauing made diuers trialls for recouering of him, now as her laſt refuge ſent mee vnto him with a packet of letters, & a ring which was of ſuch vertue, that he ſhould no ſooner haue put the ſame on his finger, but hee ſhould preſently be ſo ouercome with her loue, ỳ he ſhould not be able to reſt quiet, vntill ſuch time as he were com into her preſence. And now hauing trauelled through moſt part of Italie, and comming into this Kingdome, not paſſing tenne leagues from this Citty, comming through a Foreſt, I was taken by a mighty Giant, to me moſt feareſull, who after hee had taken from mee the caſket with diuers Jewells that I had, he returned into a Caue from whence he came: this my Lord is the cauſe of my griefe, and like-

wiſe will bee the death of the moſt gentleſt Lady liuing, if you, or ſome other noble Knight take not pitty vpon vs, by ſlaying that vgly Giant, whereby I may regaine the ring: heere againe powred ſhee forth ſuch aboundance of teares, as if her eyes had beene a fountaine, or liuely reſpiring, intermedling ỹ ſame with ſo many deepe ſighes, as would haue moued a flinty hart to compaſſion: much more then thinke you did it moue the Engliſh Prince, who willing her to be of good comfort, promiſed her that either he would worke her content, or loſe himſelfe in aduenturing the ſame: for which with a demure and ſad countenance ſhe yelded him harty thankes. What followed hereof you ſhall reade in the Chapter following.

CHAP. VIII.

How the Prince *Don Edward* departed from the Court, with the ſorrowfull Damſell, and how comming into the Forreſt, he fought with the Giant *Brandofell*, and how he was taken priſoner, for whoſe miſhap there was made great ſorrow in the Court.

THe Prince hauing promiſed helpe and ſuccour, to that vilde counterfet Damſell, toke order ỹ next day to depart towards the Forreſt: in the meane time, comming vp into ỹ Princeſſe Emelias chamber, and falling into diſcourſe with her of this his intended iourny, from which ſhe greatly diſſwaded him, her minde foretelling, the great damage which hee ſhould ſuſtaine thereby: but no diſſwations could preuaile with him herein, ſo earneſt was he bent to follow this his croſſe fortune, appointed to him by deſtenie: but after long ſpeeches betweene them of this and other matters, they fell from talke to dalliance, ſo that of a beautifull maiden, the Princeſſe became the faireſt woman in all Fraunce, at which time ſhe was conceaued of two goodly children, as you ſhall reade of hereafter. Now let vs returne to our former

former purpoſe: the next day, no ſooner had the Sunne riſing out of Dame Theris lodging, mounted himſelfe on his neuer reſting Chariot, but the valerous Prince being accompaned with the Damſell, and one Squire only, for more company he would not accept of, armed at all points ſauing his Helme, which his Squire carried by reaſon of the heate: toke his iourny towards the vnfortunate Forreſt. Moſt part of the day rode they onwards, the Damſell for the better hiding of her trechery, declared vnto him a large diſcourſe, of the loue betweene the Dutches her Lady and Piſtriſſe, and the Knight Sergando, with many his valerous and hauty deedes of armes, whereof ſome part the Prince had heard of, which cauſed him to giue the more credit to the reſt. Thus paſſed they away all that day, till comming vnto a ſmall village, ſome two leagues diſtant from the Forreſt, euen about the time, that Phœbus with his golden beames, was ſome three degrées diſcended from ỹ Meridian: and becauſe it was too late to combat with the Giant, they determined for that night to take vp their reſt, whereby the next day hee might not be altogether wearied with trauell, and alſo to haue if occaſion ſerued, the longer time to finiſh the combat. Thus hauing taken vp their lodgings in a ſmall cottage, they refreſhed themſelues with ſuch viands as that Country village would afford: and after their repaſt, betaking themſelues to their reſt, where the Prince of all the night could ſcarcely inioy one ſlumber, till towards the morning cloſing his eyes, he ſlumbred a little, in which hee thought that hee came before a goodly Caſtle, one of the faireſt that euer he beheld, hauing but one entraunce which was at a ſmall wicket, through which it ſeemed vnto him, he ſaw very many enter, but none to returne backe againe, at which hee ſeemed very much to meruaile, and going about to enter, he ſaw a mighty Gyant comming vnto him, the which ſight ſo amazed him, that forthwithall he wakened. And bleſſing himſelfe, called his Squire vnto him, and demaunding whether it were day or no, he roſe & armed himſelfe: then taking a ſmall repaſt, he

departed towards the Foreſt, where hee arriued by the time that the ſplendant Sunne with his gliſtring beames, beganne to light the earth, cauſing a ſiluer ſhowe appeare on the face thereof.

Long had hee not rode in this Foreſt, (muſing verie much what his dreame ſhould meane, ſometimes imagining that it foreſhewed ſome great miſaduenture to inſue, then wiſhing his dreame had continued, whereby he might haue had ſome notice of the end, as well as of the beginning) but the Damſell calling vnto him, told him, that now they were come euen vnto the place where the Gyant had robbed her, & that ſhe doubted he was not farre of. Wherefore calling for his Helme, and claſping it on, taking his Launce in his hand, behold there appeared before his ſight the ſame Caſtle, which in his dreame hee thought hee had ſeene: and caſting about his head, he ſaw cõming towards him a mighty Giant, the greateſt of ſtature that euer he beheld, mounted on a Courſer aunſwerable to his weight, which cauſed the Prince at the firſt almoſt to be afraid, yet well conſidering the vſuall vnluſtineſſe of thoſe huge monſters, he toke courage vnto him, minding to doe his vttermoſt to win himſelfe immortall fame, by vanquiſhing ſo huge a lumpe.

The Giant comming nere vnto him, bidde him prouide himſelfe for the Combat, for that without leaue hee was come ſo nere vnto they⁊ Caſtle whereof he was appointed Gardant. The Prince immedially replied, that ſeeing hee was by aduenture come thether, and beeing offred ỹ combat, which he was ſure would breede him immortall fame, he could doe no leſſe then accept thereof. Thẽ ſetting ſpurres to their horſes, and placing their ſtaues in their reſts, they met together with ſuch furie, that breaking they⁊ Launces into a thouſand ſhyuers, they mette with they⁊ bodies likewiſe together ſo furiouſly, that they tumbled both horſe and men to the ground, beeing both greatly aſtonied with they⁊ rude incounter: and riſing from the ground, they betoke them to they⁊ ſwords, the Giant drawing forth a mightie

Semiter,

Semiter, as much as another reaſonable Knight with one hand was able to lift from the ground: and brandiſhing the ſame about his head, began to deliuer many mighty blows at his enemie, which the Prince perceiuing, and fearing greatly to indure the ſame, not being by force able to withſtand the ſame, auoyded them by the quickneſs of his body, cauſing him to ſpend his might in vaine; and many times did hee both with thruſts and blowes indanger his mightie aduerſarie, although his Armor were of pure ſteele well-neere a finger thicke, which the Giant perceiuing, & therewith growing inraged, hee determined with one blowe to end the conflict, and lifting vp his Semiter aloft, made offer of a blowe, which the Prince thought to take on his ſhield, hoping to haue giuen him a wound in one of his legs in the meane time, as indeede he did, but the Giant hauing by this meanes a full blow at him, lighted vpon his ſhield, cleauing it in two peeces, and paſſing farther, entering through both his Helme and coyfe of ſteele, wounded him in the head, cauſing him to reele backwards halfe aſtoniſhed therewith: but yet recouering himſelfe before the Gyant could deliuer another blow, determined with the ſkilfull Maſtiue, who being once toſſed to his dammage, by the horne of the ſturdy Bull, minding no more ſo to indanger himſelfe with the like, begins to lie low on the ground, thereby hoping both to auoyde his enemies might, and eake to be ready to take the leaſt aduantage when it ſhould be offered: euen ſo playd the valiant Prince, who to his coſt hauing made tryall of his enemies ſtrength, determined no more to hazard himſelfe to the like, truſted wholy to the quickneſs of his body, which pollicie ſerued him to good vſe, for thereby he cauſed the hudge monſter, not onely to weary out himſelfe, by his multitude of blowes which hee beſtowed in vaine, but alſo many time had the meanes, to giue him diuers great wounds, cauſing his blood to iſſue out in ſuch abundant ſort, that the greene graſſe was dyed into a vermilion bluſh, as being aſhamed, that humane men ſhould haue ſo little reaſon, as to ſeeke the ruine and

ouerthrow of each other, vpon ſo ſmall occaſion.

Thus continued the fight moſt part of the day, no one knowing to whom victory would attaine, both of them being wounded in many parts of their bodies, eſpecially the Giant, who by reaſon of the great effuſion of blood, which he ſuſtained, began to beare his ſhielde low, and euen almoſt breathleſſe, the Prince being in little better caſe, was contented to ſuffer him to take breath: and leaning awhile on theyr ſwords, the Giant told the Prince, that if he would yéeld vnto him, he would cauſe him to be vſed with ý greater lenitie, otherwiſe, hee ſhould expect nought ſaue death. To which the Prince made no reply, but willing the Giant to defend himſelfe, they renewed theyr Combat, which continued awhile with great fierceneſſe on both ſides. But at length, the Giant being ouer-wearied, and fainting for want of blood, began againe to giue backe, which the prince perceiuing, and conſidering that to be long in conquering, would be the meanes that hee himſelfe in the end ſhould be vanquiſhed, tooke Time by the front, and purſuing the Giant, gaue him ſuch a blow on the Helme, that it cauſed him to réele: and before he could recouer himſelfe, hee gaue him another, which cauſed him to fall to the ground. The Prince minding to follow his good fortune, ſtoped to vnlace his Helme, whereby he might haue parted his head frō his ſhoulders: but hereof hee was hindred by the mightie Furioll, who comming vnto him, willed him to giue ouer the vanquiſhed, and to defend himſelfe againſt the force of his arme.

The Prince looking about, and beholding his terrible countenaunce and geſture, began greatly to doubt, conſidering that already hee was ouer-wearied with his former Combat: then calling to mind the wordes of the Princeſſe Emilia at his departure, he wiſhed he had béen ruled by her counſell, which if hee had followed, hee had not fallen into this vnlooked for miſchiefe. And now againe calling al feare, the Giant being come nére vnto him, he minded to ſell his life and liberty at as déere a rate as he could, determining

mining if he could, to prolong the fight as long as he might, hoping in the end to weary out that Giant, as he had done Brandofell, but hereof he was deceiued, by reaſon that his wearines, together with his loſſe of blood, had ſo taken away the agilitie and quicknes of his body, that he was not able to auoyde the blowes ſo lightly, but ẏ the Giant many times met with him, cauſing the blood to iſſue forth in ſundry places: and againe, his ſtrength was ſo diminiſhed, that he could not (if at any time by aduantage hee hapned to ſtrike the Giant) ſo much as once pierce his maſſy Armor. Thus continued they by the ſpace of halfe an howre, the Prince euer receiuing wound vppon wound, vntill at length, being altogether wearied with his ouer-long trauell, (as hauing continued in fight from ſeauen of ẏ clocke in the morning, vntill fiue in the afternoone, and hauing loſt great aboundance of blood,) gathered all his forces together, and minding before hee died, to indamage his enemie what he could, ſtrake at the Giant, which he auoyding, the blow diſcended to the ground: and the Prince not being able to recouer his might, being ſo farre ſpent, fell therewith to the ground alſo in a traunce. Which the Giant beholding, and (contrary to his nature) pitying his ouerthrow, conſidering the great ballour which he had ſeene in him, went and pulled off his Helme to giue him ayre, and taking him vppe in his armes, carried him into the Caſtle, where he was layd on a good bedde, and his wounds carefully looked vnto. For Syr Peſtrill, who vnder the Duke his Cozin was Commaunder of the Caſtle, was a very vertuous knight, and one who greatly pitied the Princes captiuity: conſidering what greefe would thereby riſe, both to the King, and all the Nobilitie of Fraunce. He alſo cauſed the body of the Giant Brandofell to be brought in and cured: whoſe wounds though they were many and great, yet were there none of them mortall. The Damſell ſeeing things fort according to her minde, departed away highly contented.

Now returne we to the Princes Squyre, who hauing beheld

beheld this vnhappy ouer-throw of his Maiſter, together with his impriſonment, not knowing whether hee were liuing or dead, fared like a man out of his wits, and ran raging vp and downe the Foreſt, crying and exclaiming againſt fortune, and the deſtinies which had permitted ſuch great iniuſtice: and at length, the morning being come, hee determined to returne vnto the Citty of Parris, where the next day he arriued, and comming vnto the King, before him and all the nobles of the Court, hee recounted his Maſters miſaduenture, together with all that hapned in the battaile with ỹ two Giants: which bred ſuch a griefe and amazednesſe in all the hearers, as well you may iudge if the like euent ſhould hapen. Euery one determining to hazard their liues, or to ſet him free if he liued, all concluding it to be an inchauntment, knowing that in that place, there was neuer any Caſtle heard of. But when this newes came to the Princeſſe Emilia, you may well thinke her griefe was not ſmal, for falling preſently into a traunce, her Damſells had much to doe to recouer life in her againe: and being in the end recouered, burſting forth into bitter exclamations, both againſt the heauens and powers thereof, thus continued ſhee all that night, ſounding and reſounding in the armes of her Ladies and Gentlewomen: the King her father, and the Quéne vſing all the meanes they could, by perſwaſions to comfort her. Heere will wee for a while leaue them in this generall lamentation, for the loſſe of the English Prince, euery one making proniſion to goe try the ſame aduenture: and will returne to ſpeake, of the Prince Iago of Saxonie.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

How the Prince of *Saxonie* remaining, diſcontent in his fathers Court after the departure of *Euerdanus*: departed ſecretly as a Knight arrant, to ſeeke aduentures.

You may remember how diſcontented the Saxon Prince tooke the departure of his ſuppoſed brother, the Gentleman of the Forreſt: who hauing ſeene him abroad, & being againe returned vnto the Court, beganne to waxe ſo melancholy, that hee ſeemed to take delight in nothing, although the Duke his father perceauing it, and for remedy for the ſame, deuiſed all the meanes he could to worke his content, as by proclaming Iuſts and turnaments, wherein he heretofore was wont to receaue great content, and other times hunting of the wilde Boare, and ſuch other exerciſes, ſtill fearing his departure.

But neither this, nor yet the delightfull company of the Princeſſe his ſiſter, whom he intirely loued, could in any ſort worke him that content, which he was wont to receaue in the company of the Gentleman of the Forreſt: whoſe want, together with the deſire of following ſtrange aduentures, wherein he hoped to atchieue immortall renowne, by his valiant and heroick deedes, which hee doubted not but to performe, increaſed in him ſuch an ardent deſire to trauell. Wherof many times being denaied by the Duke his Father, at length hauing reſolued with himſelfe to depart, he called vnto him one of his Squires whom hee intirely loued, and on whoſe ſecreſie and good ſeruice, hee more depended then on any other, and declaring vnto him his determination, willed him to prouide for their departure, which ſhould bee with all the ſecreſie that might bee. His Squire, hauing vnderſtoode his Maiſters reſolution, departed to prouide for the ſame, and comming to the harbor, found a ſhip ready bound for England: and agreeing

with the maiſter thereof for their paſſage, the next night conuayed aboard both horſe and armor, and ſuch other things as ſhould bee requiſite for their iourny: and hauing informed the Prince hereof, the next day, the Prince being accompanied only with his Squire, as many times he was accuſtomed, departed from the Pallace, not ſuſpected of any one, hauing left in his chamber windowe, a letter written to his father, declaring therein the cauſe of his departure. Thus walking a ſute, they arriued towards euening at the port where the ſhippe ancored, and comming aboard, hauing the winde faire, they ſet ſaile, directing their courſe for Douer, of which harbor the ſhippe was. Thus beeing at Sea, and hauing the winde and weather faire, ỹ Prince betooke himſelfe to ſleepe, being with cares ouerwatched, for in three nights before he had not ſlept, ſo earneſt was his minde bent on this his iourny: and now being as hee thought in ſecurity from being ſtopped of his purpoſe, hee ſlept ſoundly, till it was towards the morning, when hee thought there appeared before his ſight, ỹ beautifulleſt Lady that euer he beheld: who comming vnto him, caſt herſelfe into his armes, deſiring his protection againſt a fierce and vgly Giant, who purſued her. The Prince herewith awaking, beganne to ponder with himſelfe, concerning his dreame, muſing what it might ſignifie, but the beauty and comly grace of the Lady, ſtucke ſo faſt in his memory, that by no meanes he could put ỹ ſame out of his minde: which cauſed him in the end, to conclude, that it muſt needes bee ſome Lady, whom the deſtinies had ordained him to loue, determined to yeeld himſelfe priſoner, before the aſſault ſhould grow too hote: thus continued this amerous young Prince, intangled in her beauty whom he neuer had ſeene, minding to reſt in no place, vntill ſuch time as he had found her out, whom in his dreame he beheld. By this time had they continued at Sea by the ſpace of eight daies, not meeting with any aduenture worth the memory, hauing the winde faire, and the Seas ſo calme as might bee, till on the ninth day comming almoſt on ſhore on ỹ caoſt of Fraunce,

they

they perceaued a shippe with sailes and oares, as much as they could to make towards them: which the Maister and the rest of the Saylers, presently knewe to be a Pyrat, and calling the Prince vnto them, to knowe what counsell hée would giue in this extremitie, they all beeing minded to yéeld, rather then to fight, considering the vnequalnesse of the match, and the cruelty the Pyrats commonly vsed to those, who made resistance. But the Prince not minding to submit himselfe into the hands of such villaines, gaue them counsell not to yéeld, but to fight it out to ỳ last man, and calling for his Armor, immediatly armed himselfe: swearing them all to performe their best indeuours, for to defend themselues.

By this time was the Pirate come vp with them, and warning them to yéelde vnto his mercie, the Prince standing aloft vppon the decke, with his sword drawne in his hand, & his shield vpon his arme, replied, that they meant to defend themselues, as not béeing accustomed with words to be daunted. The Pirat Geroll hearing this aunswere, commaunded to grapple with the English shyp. The prince at the first incountring with a great lubber, who proffered to leape aboord their shyp, gaue him so sound a blow on the sconce, that it caused him out of the shrowdes to tumble headlong into the Sea, and after him another, and another: so that in the part of the ship where hée was, the fight began to grow exceeding hote, many of the Pirats souldiers béeing gotten aboord, but by the helpe of his Squire, and the Maisters mate, who was a lustie fellow, they quickly cléered theyr shippe againe, and the Prince hauing receiued a wound by one of the Pyrats, who was aboord theyr owne shyp, not knowing which way to be reuenged, leapt forthwith into theyr shyp, & béeing inraged, laid on such blowes, that euery one thought himselfe happiest when they were farthest from him: for by this time there were slaine aboue twenty of the Pirats. Which Geroll perceiuing, & knowing right well that if the Knight were slaine, he should easily vanquish the rest: and hoping to performe it with his

owne hands, he came ſtealing behind him, but the Prince who was ordained to finiſh greater matters, perceiuing his intent, turned his face towards him, giuing him ſuch a ſalutation with his ſword, that it cauſed him to bend with one of his knées euen to the deck.

Now began betweene them two a moſt cruell Combat, the Pyrat being a ſtrong and luſtie fellow, & one that had fought in many dangerous battels, and alſo being ayded by thoſe of his partie, aſſaulted the Prince with great fury, and were as gallantly by him reſiſted, to their no ſmal preiudice: for within leſſe then halfe an howre, hee had ſlaine fiue of them, wounding y reſt very grieuouſly. And by this time the Engliſh Ship, hauing tackt about, came to the reſcue of the Prince, which ſo diſmayed the Pyrats, that being but tenne of them left aliue, and they for the moſt part hurt, as before-ſaid, determined to intreate for mercy, and falling downe vpon their knées, beſought the Prince with one voyce to ſaue their liues: which he eaſily yelded vnto. And taking courſe for the ſafe cuſtodie of the ſhyp, they hauing with great deuotion giuen thankes vnto almighty GOD for this ſo happy victory, which they had ſo luckily obtained without the loſſe of any one man, & dreſſing thoſe that were hurt, with ſuch ſalues and other needfull things, whereof they found good ſtore aboord the Pyrat, they directed their courſe for Douer, where the nert day they ſafely arriued: where the Prince, at the requeſt of the Owner of the Ship, ſtayed by the ſpace of three dayes, during which time, there arriued many of the Country people to behold him: for by this time was his fame ſpred abroad by the Marriners, to his great renowne. And the Lieuetenant that had the gouernment of that Fort vnder the King of England, being then returned from certaine affayres which he had to doe, entertained him with the greateſt honour that might be. To whom the Prince would not make himſelfe knowne, but as a Knight arrant, minding to trauell to the Court of the King of England, the fame whereof had brought him from his natiue Country.

An

And now having reſted himſelfe by the ſpace of tenne dayes, for the curing of ſuch woundes as he had receiued in the former conflict, and ſeing the Pyrats executed, according to the Lawes of that Realme, determined to depart the next day towards London, where the King then kept his Court, hauing remained a long time in great penſiuenelle for the loſſe of his ſonne Prince Edward.

CHAP. X.

Howe *Iago* comming to the Engliſh Court, tooke in hand the defence of a Lady falſly accuſed: and what hapned thereof.

THe Prince Iago, hauing taken his leaue of the Gouernour of Douer, toke his way directly towards London, accompanied onely with his Squire, vnto whom for the more pleaſant paſſing of the time, hee recounted his dreame, in a viſion which hee had ſeene at his comming out of Saxony. Thus paſt they away theyr wearifome iourney, till on the fourth day comming within fiue miles of the Citty, they heard one moſt pittifully weeping: and drawing ſomewhat neere the ſame, there being a high banke betweene them and the voyce which they heard, they ſtayed awhile to vnderſtand the cauſe of that lamentation. When ſuddenly they might heare the weeping ceaſe, and the party to fetch a deepe and grieuous ſigh, ſaying: Is it poſſible, that God will altogether forſake the diſtreſſed innocent, and ſuffer ſuch great iniuſtice, not ra[illegible]ng vp any one to helpe or ſuccour theyr righteſull cauſe againſt ſo euident a treaſon: O y it would pleaſe him to raiſe vp another Daniell, to find out theyr accurſed forgeries, and to free this his diſtreſſed Suſanna, or that it would pleaſe his almighty power, to indue mee with ſtrength and courage, whereby I might force them to confeſſe theyr moſt wrongfull and falſe accuſation, againſt the moſt vertuous Lady liuing: but alas, I ſee mine own forces,

ces, béeing a weake and féeble woman, to too far vnable to accompliſh the ſame, and the eares of the Almighty ſo ſtopt againſt my prayers, that he doth not heare thē. But what doo I meane, ſo much to blaſpheme his holy Name, as to ſay hée doth not heare, when alas it is our ſinnes which cauſeth him not to grant what we require: or peraduenture he may deferre the ſame, to the greater ſetting forth of his glory: that when all hope is paſt, euen then hee may ſhew his omnipotent power by ſome ſtrange deliuerance. Héere againe ſhe pauſed.

And Iago mounting vp the banke, perceiued that ſhee was a comely young Gentlewoman, whom hee ſaluted, and béeing by her againe reſaluted, he demaunded ỹ cauſe of her griefe, which by her complaint he imagined to be very great: aſſuring her withall, that if the matter were correſpondent vnto truth, and to be tryed by dint of ſword, ſhe had met with one, who would willingly hazard his life in defence of the innocent. The Damſell hearing his kind proffer, and withall, viewing the comly proportion of his body, began ſomewhat to comfort herſelfe, hoping ỹ God had ſent him of purpoſe, to defend the iuſt cauſe of her diſtreſſed Lady, anſwered him. Moſt curteous and valiant Knight, for ſo much my mind doth aſſure you to be, I render you infinite thanks for this your kind & willing offer, hoping by the time you haue heard my wofull narration, you will be throughly aſſured of the equity of the cauſe, which hath moued in me, & many more this ſorrow, which euen now you found in me, and the vniuſt and trecherous dealing, of the moſt diſloialleſt Knight that liues. Knowe then, that whilſt this Court of England enioyed their moſt ſallerous Prince Don Edward, who now by the ſpace of eyghtéene yéres hath continued impriſoned in an inchaunted Caſtle in Fraunce, did flouriſh with many braue and hardie Knights, amongſt whom there was a noble Gentleman, called the Lord Mowbray, a man for his vertue and vallor greatly eſtéemed of all, but eſpecially beloued by the Prince, with whom hee went into Fraunce, where by his

vallor

ballor he wonne immortall fame: and after the loſſe of the Prince, hazarding himſelfe for his deliuerance, was likewiſe there taken priſoner. This Lord left behind him at his departure, a ſonne and a daughter, his ſonne beeing of the age of ſeauen yéeres, and his daughter called Beleriza, of the age of fiue yéeres, both vnder the cuſtody of their vertuous and noble Mother: who hauing brought them vp in vertuous and godly liuing, vntill they were of ripe yéeres, departed this world, leauing both her children vnto their owne gouernments: Beleriza had béene of long time beloued & ſued vnto, by a gallant young Knight, named Franciſco, whom ſhée likewiſe intirely loued, yet minding to proue his loyaltie, intreated him to goe into Fraunce, to combat with the two Giants, Brandofell and Furioll, who kept the Inchaunted Caſtle, where the Prince and her father, with diuers other famous Knights were impriſoned. Franciſco willing to haue ſo fit occaſion, both to pleaſure his Lady and Miſtriſſe, and alſo to ſhowe forth his ballor, which he thought euen vnmatchable, preſently conſented, promiſing to worke wounders, and ſo fitting himſelfe, departed towards Fraunce. But before his taking ſhippe hée wrote vnto his Lady, as néere as I can geſſe, theſe inſuing verſes.

Beleriza Goddeſſe mine,
Whoſe beauty *Venus* ſtaines,
Whoſe only chaſt vertuous minde,
Solely *Diana* daines.

Thy Maieſty not farre vnmeet,
To ſtately *Ioue* his Queene:
Thy pregnant wit to *Pallas* eake,
Full rightly I doe deeme.

Thou thou, I ſay, my hart haſt bound
In chaines of ſeruile loue:
My hart that earſt full free I found,
Inflamde is from aboue.

Doe

Doe thou ô then vouchſafe my deere,
To eaſe thoſe firy flames:
By being conſtant vnto him,
That burnes with thoſe ſame flames.

Then ſhall my vigor ſo increaſe,
And arme grow ſo ſtrong:
That *Brandofell* and *Furioll* both,
On ground Ile lay a long.

And from Inchauntment free I will,
That noble Sire of thine,
Together with our native Prince,
That there ſo long hath line.

Yours if his owne,
Don Franciſco.

Hauing written theſe verſes vnto his Lady, he departed, what ſithence hath hapned vnto him I doe not know, but imagine he hath ſped as ill as thoſe, who heeretofore haue made triall of the ſame aduenture. Now being departed, there was another gallant, which likewiſe fell in liking with my Lady Beleriza, one whom indeede the inheritance of my Lord their father, if they both hapned to die without iſſue, of right did appertaine. This gallant called Signior Roberto, imagining that my Lord their father, and his kinſman was either deade, or neuer to be deliuered, deuiſed which way to aſſure himſelfe of his poſſeſſions: and thinking if hee could deuiſe how to obtaine my Lady to bee his wife, the matter were in a manner aſſured, conſidering that her brother, whoſe name was likewiſe called Roberto, being a man of a valient and hauty minde, would hazard himſelfe in the aduenture of the Inchaunted Caſtle, wherein he did not doubt, but that he would be either ſlaine, or taken priſoner, and then of right it ſhould appertaine vnto him. And being reſolued hereon, hee vſed all

the

the meanes he could to obtaine her liking. But ſhe hauing ſetled her affection, as is before ſayd, on Don Franciſco, made ſmall or no account him: which he perceauing, turned all his fained loue into hatred, deuiſing which way to bring to paſſe by trechery, that which he could not hope for by the loue of my Lady, which in the end he thus brought to paſſe.

Hauing many times animated his Coſin Don Roberto, to hazard himſelfe for the deliuery of my Lord his father, which the young Gentleman himſelfe, had a great deſire vnto, and now hauing taken the order of Knighthode, and made preparation for his iourny into Fraunce: and being accompanied only with one Squire, riding through a thicket towards the Sea-ſide, through which he muſt nedes paſſe, was at vnwares ſet on by a cupple of villaines, and before he could drawe his ſword, was by them ſlaine: his Squire flying away, with in leſſe then a mile, met with this graund homicide, his Maiſters kinſman, vnto whom he recounted the murder of his Maiſter.

Don Roberto hearing this, making as if he had grieued thereat mightily, raiſing the Country to apprehend thoſe murtherers, the one of them taking a Riuer, hoping thereby to eſcape, was drowned therein: the other being taken, was knowne to bee a ſeruant to the trayto: Don Roberto, who comming where he was, after he had priuatly talked with him, and inſtructed him what he ſhould ſay, examined him openly, where the villaine moſt falſely auouched, that they were hired to commit this murder, by my Lady Beleriza, which hee no ſoner had confeſſed, but Don Roberto, fearing leaſt the feare of death ſhould make him in the end to confeſſe the truth, with his ponyard ſuddenly ſtabbed him to the hart. Then poſting to the Court, hee cauſed my Lady to be apprehended, accuſing her before the King of the murder of her brother, which alas, was more grieuous vnto her, then the ſentence of her owne death, which preſently by the King was pronounced againſt her: if that within twelue months ſhee were not prouided of a

Knight, who in combat with Don Roberto, ſhould maintaine her innocencie. And now there is not paſſing tenne daies to come of the preſixed time, ſhee good Lady not hauing any one, who will hazard himſelfe for her deliuerance, although ſhe is greatly pitied of euery one: yet ſo much is the number of good and hardy Knights in this Kingdome abated, by the occaſion of the Princes loſſe, that there is ſcarce any one thought able to match the traytor in ſingle fight. Loe heere moſt noble Knight, haue I as neere as I can, declared vnto you the truth: hoping that God will ſo guide your minde, as to vndertake the defence, of the moſt vertuous and ſorrowfull Beleriza.

The Prince Iago, hauing attentiuely liſtned vnto her whole diſcourſe, by which he aſſured himſelfe of the innocencie of the Lady, bad her recomfort herſelfe, for if at his arriuall at the Court, by inquiry hee ſhould finde the matter to be as ſhe had declared, hee would, if Beleriza would accept of him as her Champion, hazard his body for her defence, not doubting but to make her accuſer confeſſe his treaſon againſt her. Thus taking the Damſell wᵗ him, they rode towards the Citty, where they arriued a little before night: The next day hauing reſted himſelfe, and viewed the ſtatelineſſe of the Citty, which to him ſeemed the goodlieſt that euer he beheld, hee did what he might to inquire, the truth of the Ladies impriſonment: where by diuers he was informed in the ſame, euen as the Damſell had declared vnto him. Thus hauing ſtayed ſome foure or fiue daies in the Citty, being continually viſited by the Damſell, and now being throughly reſolued of the innocencie of her Lady, was deſirous to ſee her, & to know whether ſhe would accept of him as her Champion. And being by the Damſell conuaied vnto the place where ſhee remained impriſoned, he was by her moſt kindly welcomed, giuing him a thouſand thankes for his proffered kindneſſe, by her not any waies deſerued, and admitting him for her Champion, ſhe ſayd. Noble Knight, I heere freely deliuer vnto you, the defence both of my life and honor, deſiring God no other way

to

to ſpéde you, then according to the truth and equitie of my cauſe, which he knowes beſt: aſſuring you farther, that the death of my brother for which I am accuſed, is more grieuious vnto me, thē any torment I can indure. It is true replied ỹ prince, euery vertuous wight, regardeth more ỹ loſſe of their friends, then of themſelues, and I beleeue the ſame of you: wherefore I doe not doubt, but to your eternall fame, I ſhall make manifeſt your innocencie. Thus departed he away, making preparation againſt the battaile: what happened therein, you ſhall reade in the Chapter following.

CHAP. XI.

How the Prince *Iago* fought with *Roberto*, and cauſed him to confeſſe his treaſon againſt *Beleriza*.

THe day being come in which the beautifull Beleriza, was either to preſent her Champion, or ſuffer death, for the ſurmiſed murther of her brother. The King with diuers of his Nobles, being already placed on their ſcaffold to behold the battaile: the priſoner was brought fourth attired all in blacke, hauing a faire white Laune caſt ouer her head, being accompanied with many beautifull Ladies of the Court, attired alſo in mourning apparell, bewailing her miſfortune: thus was ſhee conducted vnto a ſcaffold appointed for her, after her came the Appellant, mounted on a ſtately bay courſer, all in tauny armor, as ſorrowing for the death of his kinſman. And comming before the King, bending himſelfe in his Saddle, as doing obedience to his Maieſtie, ſpake as followeth. Moſt dread Soueraigne, I humbly beſeech you to cauſe that deteſtable murtherer, either preſently to bring fourth her Champion, if ſhe be of any one prouided, whom I may forthwith, to ỹ manifeſtation of her crime ouercome, or if ſhe be not prouided, that then according to the lawe ſhee be forthwith executed.

The King diſliking this is preſumption, as alſo greatly affecting Beleriza, for her fathers ſake, ſayd. Signior Roberto, I know not whether ỹ priſoner be prepared of a Champion or no, but your preſumptious boldneſſe, in going about to teach mee what I haue to doe, cauſeth me thinke that your great pride will ſome take a fall, for you might well haue ſtayed your haſt, vntill I had cauſed the trumpets, according to the vſe of Armes, to ſummon the deffendant: and then if he had not come forth at the third ſummons, you might boldly haue demaunded iuſtice.

Then ſtaying a while, the trumpets were willed to ſound to warne the defendant, who forthwith being mounted on a milke white Stéede, his Armor all gréne, beſet with Couſlips of gold, and bearing in his ſhield in an Azure field a beautifull Lady, with his word in letters of gold, Vbi neſcio: repreſenting thereby, the Lady whom he ſawe in his dreame. In this manner entred hee the Liſts, and trotting with a comly ſoft pace towards the King, with his Beauer lifted vp, to whom he did reuerence, demaunding which was the Knight, who had ſo falſely accuſed the ſorrowfull Lady. The King beholding his comly grace, and perceauing by his ſpéech that he was a ſtranger, moſt courtiouſly, ſhewed him Signior Roberto: vnto whom Iago ſpake as followeth.

Sir Knight, I doe not a little meruaile, how you béing a man honorably diſcended, could harbor ſo baſe and vild a thought, as to accuſe this Lady your kinſwoman, of a murther wherein your ſelfe ſéemeth to be an Actor, otherwiſe you would not ſo ſuddenly haue killed that wicked homicide your ſeruant, but haue ſuffred him to haue liued, and openly to haue confeſſed that, which you in your conſcience did greatly feare hee would denie: but I doubt not but God, by my arme, will manifeſt that, which by his death you did hope to haue concealed. Roberto raiſing him ſelfe in his ſtirrups, and raging to be ſo touched with the truth, and truſting in his owne might and force, replyed in this manner.

Fole-hardy

Fole-hardy Knight, thou ſhalt ſone know what thy folly hath gained, by bæing allured with her lookes to hazard thy life in a cauſe ſo vniuſt as this is which thou doſt defend, and how farre thy falſe and opprobrious ſpæches hath incenſed my choller againſt thæ, that whē as recreant thou ſhalt aſke mercy, in ſtæd thereof thou ſhalt receiue cruell death. The King hearing theſe proude ſpæches, commanded the Iudges of ẏ field to take the othes of both knights, then the trumpets ſounding, warned thē to prepare to the battell. Thus bæing by the Iudges placed in the liſts, hauing wind and ſunne equally diſtributed vnto them, they ſet ſpurres to their horſes, & placing they: Launces in they: reſts, they met together with ſuch fury, that breaking their ſtaues to they: hands, Roberto was throwne frō his horſe, and the Prince hauing likewiſe loſt one of his ſtirrups, paſſed on without any great ſemblance of mouing: and comming to the end of his courſe, turning about his horſe, hee ſaw Signior Roberto addreſſing himſelfe for the ſame combat: which he no ſoner perceiued, but alighting from his horſe, & drawing forth his ſword, went to mæt him, where betwæne them began a moſt cruell and doubtfull combat, no man knowing to which party victory was like to inſue, Don Roberto bæing a very ſtrong and mightie Knight, layd on blowes amaine, as truſting in his great ſtrength, which ſurely was much, and had hee bæne indued as well with vertue as vallour, he might well haue bæne eſtæmed for one of the beſt Knights in England.

Don Iago, on the other ſide, bæing very nimble & quicke of body, although not altogether ſo ſtrong as his enemy, auoyded his blowes with very great ſkill, many times wounding his aduerſary, both with thruſts and blowes, himſelfe ſometimes receiuing wounds likewiſe: ſo that the ground was beſprinckled with they: blood, which iſſued out in many places through they: Armor. Thus continued they by the ſpace of one whole howre, neuer ſo much as once taking breath, by which time their Armor was broken in many places, eſpecially that of the Prince Iago, which

bæing not altogether of the beſt, though gallant to the eye, was broken the ſoner with his huge blowes: although on the contrary ſide, Roberto had receiued more great & dangerous wounds, through the thruſts which the Prince had made. And now bæing both breathleſſe, they reſted themſelues awhile, viewing each other, and ſtudying which way moſt how to indammage his aduerſary. At length, they hauing well reſted thẽſelues, they fell to theyr combat afreſh, the Prince lago ſeeming more luſtie and quicke then at the beginning, began now to follow his aduerſary with many mighty blowes and ſharpe thruſts, cauſing him in a manner, nothing but to defend himſelfe: and imagining indeed that he was not long able to continue, very vnaduiſedly purſued him with blowes and thruſts, not hauing any regard to defend himſelfe, but to offend his foe. Which Roberto perceiuing, gaue him ſo cruell a blow on ẏ right ſide, that pearcing his Armor, which was not of ſufficient force to defend the might of his arme, wounded him to the bone: which the Prince feeling, and conſidering that it came by his raſh careleſneſſe, determined to haue a greater regard to himſelfe: & following his fortune with good aduiſement, gaue Don Roberto to vnderſtand, that ẏ blow was to him a good ſchoole point, ſo that at length hauing driuen him from place to place, bæing no longer able to withſtand his force, hauing loſt great abundance of blood, hee fell on his knees, deſiring him to ſaue his life, and he would confeſſe ẏ whole truth.

The Prince hæreunto ſome granted, and bringing him before the King, Roberto confeſſed, firſt how he had deuiſed to come vnto the inheritance of the Lord Mowbray his kinſman, by marrying with his daughter, and afterwards bæing by her refuſed, how he had deuiſed this meanes, as in the former Chapter is declared. Which when the King with the reſt of the Lords there preſent had heard, they did not a little meruaile hereat: and preſently cauſing the Lady Beleriza to be fet, and greatly honoured, extolling the ſtrange Knight highly, the King demaunded of Beleriza of

whence

whence and what he was: to which ſhe anſwered that ſhe knew not. Then the King demaunded of himſelfe of what Country he was. And he very curteouſly aunſwered him, that he was borne in the Dukedom of Saxony, and hauing giuen his mind to trauell, was commonly called the Knight of Fortune: and now happning to arriue to this Country, and comming to view this Court, the ſtatelines whereof he had many times before heard of, was by chance giuen to vnderſtand, the wrong which was done vnto Beleriza by her Coſin Don Roberto, and conſidering that it is the part of all Knights to defend the innocent, eſpecially Ladies and Gentlewomen, who are not able to defend themſelues, I vndertoke the ſame, which by the aſſiſtance of ỹ Almighty I haue accompliſhed.

The King hearing this his ſpeech, which he vttered with a moſt comly grace, greatly commended him in his hart: and giuing charge vnto his Surgions for the curing of his wounds, wherof he had great neede, he determined to proceede in iudgement againſt Signior Roberto. But hee by this time, through the many grieuous and mortal wounds which he had receiued, had giuen vp the ghoſt: whereby he preuented the King of inflicting the puniſhment which hee worthily deſerued, and which aſſuredly, if he had liued, hee ſhold haue ſuffered. But now ſeing he was already dead, the King commaunded him to be buried in the ſame place where the battel was fought, cauſing him to be layd for the honour of the Houſe, from whence hee was diſcended, in a Tombe of Parble, very curiouſly wrought, with this Epitaph written thereon.

Heere lyes *Don Roberto* murderer vilde,
a Knight by birth of high diſſent,
Who for the hope of gaining this worlds pelfe,
his kinſman he moſt vildly ſlew,
And for the ſame a curteous noble Dame
his ſiſter deere he did accuſe:
But now at laſt, *Ioue* pittying her eſtate,

and

and lothing eake ſo vild a deede,
For which the earth did vengeance craue,
as when firſt murder did befall,
Heauen ſent this murdrer vild for to confound,
the Knight of Fortune calde by Fame.

The King béing come vnto the Court, cauſed the Lady to be reſtored vnto all ſuch things, as during her impriſonment had béne detained from her, greatly honoring her for her vertue, which by this her former troubles did more clérely appeare. Alſo hee entertained the Knight of Fortune, with the greateſt courtiſie that might be, viſiting him continually each day, during the time that his wounds were curing: Where we will leaue him for a while, to declare what hapned vnto ẏ noble Prince Euordanus, whom we left in the Kingdome of Ireland, going to combat with Adreſto.

CHAP. XII.

How the Knight of the Lyons departing from the Caſtle of *Molenda*, arriued at *Dublin*, where he fought with *Adreſto*.

THE Knight of the Lyons, hauing awhile remained at the Caſtle of Molenda, to reſt himſelfe and his company, departed towards Dublin, where by the good conduct of his ſeruant Gillimo, hauing paſt many woods, Mountaines and Bogges, he arriued ẏ nert day following a little before night at Dublin, and taking vp his lodging in an honeſt Burgeſſes houſe of the Towne, was by the owner thereof well entertained: and making inquirie, was giuen to vnderſtand the great proweſſe of Adreſto, daily ſhewed on thoſe Knights that came to try themſelues againſt him, whereof there had bén very few who euer had the honour to Combat with him, ſuch good fortune had he alwaies following him in his Iuſts.

Which

Which the Knight of the Lyons vnderſtanding, and fearing the wearineſſe of his horſe might bee to him ſome loſſe of honor, determined to reſt himſelfe a day or two, in which he wrote vnto hime this letter following.

To the diſloyall and falſe forſworne Knight,
Signior Adreſto.

MOſt falſe and diſloyall Adreſto, I cannot a little admire, that thou beeing a man of ſuch ineſtimable ballour, as by fame thou art reported to be, canſt ſo farre diſpence with thy conſcience, (as ſetting at naught all thy forepaſſed vowes and oaths, made vnto the moſt vertuous, and excellent Princeſſe the Dutches Lenarda, whom in truth thou art not worthy ſo much as to ſerue,) doeſt notwithſtanding all thoſe graces and fauours, which ſhe hath beſtowed vppon thée, moſt falſely forſake her, and leauing her to bewaile thy vntruth, doeſt héere ſollace thy ſelfe in the company of a vilde curtizan. Let me admoniſh thée, to giue ouer this thy lewd kind of life, and returne to her who languiſheth in thy loue, or elſe if thou wilt not, I defie thée vnto mortall battaile, in which I doubt not but to make thée confeſſe thy diſloyalty: returne mee thy aunſwere by this bearer, by which I may knowe thy minde: farwell.

Thy friend or foe by thy choiſe, the
Knight of the Lyons.

This letter beeing deliuered vnto Adreſto, by Gillimo, put him into an exceéding chafe at the firſt, but afterwards duly conſidering the contents thereof, it ſomething mittigated his choller, and calling for pen & inke, he wrote backe this aunſwere.

To his vnknowne foe the Knight of the
Lyons.

THy proude and arrogant reuilings, wherewith thou beginneſt thy letter, cauſeth mee the leſſe to regard thy

deſiance, which in the end thou pronounceſt againſt mée: conſidering that ſuch words moſt commonly proceede from effeminate perſons, who can doe nothing but raile, of which number I doe thinke thée to be one. As for the matter contained in the letter, touching my vnfaithfull dealing with the Dutches Lenarda, my ſword and Launce ſhall aunſwere for me: and likewiſe giue thée to vnderſtand, if that to morrowe in the morning, thou dare méete me in the Liſts, how much thy ouer-weaning folly hath deſceaued thée: farwell.

Thy vndoubted enemie
Don Adreſto.

The next day, no ſoner had beautifull Aurora, rowſing herſelfe out of old Nox his couch, ſtept forth into the viewe of this world, being raide in her wonted garments of gray, and as it were halfe bluſhing to haue remained ſo long, in the loutiſh armes of her late old bed-fellowe, went to welcome hee new Bridge-grome the ſonne, but our two noble Knights being mounted on their ſtately Stéeds, and armed at all points, entred the Liſts: ſcarce daring one to ſpeake to the other. And now hauing fetcht their carere, met together with ſuch force, that their Launces were broken into a thouſand ſhiuers, the ſplinters thereof ſlying into the aire, themſelues both paſſing on without any motion of mouing in their Saddles: and hauing ended their courſe, and turning about their horſes, Adreſto intreated the Knight of the Lions, to breake a ſtaffe or two more, vntill ſuch time as one of them were diſmounted, to which he willingly agreed: and at ỹ commaundement of Adreſto, there was a bundle of Launces brought, the Knight being willed to chuſe firſt.

Then running againe, they incountred with ſuch force, that Adreſto loſing both his ſtirrups, was likewiſe forced to take hold by his horſe mane, the other being in the ſame ſort driuen to take hold, hauing loſt his right ſtirrup, & the reynes

reynes of his bridle, yet paſſed they both onwards, and cõming to the end of their courſe, toke new Launces, each confeſſing to himſelfe, neuer to haue receiued the like incounter: and then ſetting their ſpurres the third time to their horſes, Adreſto vſed theſe or ſuch like ſpeeches to himſelfe: Fie, fie, Adreſto, what is become of thy former valls, which wall wont to ſend euery one with whom thou incountredſt, to take meaſure of his length on the ground: is thy ſtrength growne weaker then it hath beene, or doth thy conſcience accuſing thee of diſloialtie towards Lenarda, cauſe thy force to diminiſh: no, it is neither, but onely the vallor of this Knight, with whom thou doſt contend. On the otherſide, the Knight of the Lyons calling to his minde his beloued Lady the Princeſſe Egiſena, ſaid: Deere Lady, ſee heere thy feeble Knight, as it were mated by this falſe Adreſto, nay, onely the feare of your diſlike, is the cauſe that he hath beene able to indure againſt me: but I beſeech you call to minde your former kiudneſſes, and confirme the ſame with your conſtant aſſurance, and then I doubt not but to be well able to vanquiſh this Knight, whom for his vallor I cannot chuſe but loue.

Theſe ſpeeches on both ſides were ſcarce ended, when meeting together, they brake their ſtaues hard home to their Gauntlets, and meeting with their bodies, they ruſhed together in ſuch ſort, that their horſes had much to do to ſtand vnder them, but were forced to ramble backwards, but at length, hauing recouered themſelues, the Knights beeing both wearied with their rough incoũters, not minding any more to Juſt, drew forth their ſwords, and preparing themſelues to the Combat, the Knight of the Lyons was the firſt that aſſayled his aduerſary: and tutching his horſe with his left ſpurre, came cloſe with Adreſto, deliuering him ſuch a blow on the ſhield, that ſpeing away a great part thereof, wounded him a little on the left thygh: which Don Adreſto, ſoone requited, for comming in with his left ſide, and making as if he would haue giuen a thruſt at his body, ſuddenly by the agillity and quickneſſe of his

horſe, he was on the other ſide of him, and deliuered a full blowe at his head, taking him ſo ſound a knocke, that had it not bene for the goodneſſe of his Armor, he had then ended the battaile: but the Armor beeing of approued goodneſſe ſaued his Maiſter from any hurt, although ỹ weight thereof did halfe a ſtony him, but comming ſone to his memory, & raiſing himſelfe in his ſtirrupps, he gaue Adreſto a mighty blowe, which had he not warded with his ſhield, had aſſuredly claue him to the teeth, for notwithſtanding, the goodneſſe of the ſhield, which was of pure & well tempered ſteele: he claue it in the midſt, and entring through both Helme and coyfe, wounded him in the head, to the great aſtoniſhment of his ſences. Thus continued they a great while with equall odds, not one knowing which had the aduantage: for although Adreſto had receaued many wounds, yet the vertue of the Ring which he weare on his finger was ſuch, that he loſt not one droppe of blood: Thus hauing continued by the ſpace of two houres, at laſt the Knight of the Lions, hauing giuen him a mighty blowe on the head, which cauſed him as one in a traunce to reele on his horſe, and before ſuch time as he could recouer himſelfe, hauing deliuered another blowe betweene his head & ſhoulders, cauſed him to fall from his horſe in a traunce, which the Knight of the Lions perceauing, immediatly diſmounted, thinking to haue taken off his Helme, and to haue giuen him ayre, but before hee could come vnto him, Adreſto had recouered his feete, and taking vp his ſword, which hung by a ſmall chayne faſtned vnto his arme, ſayd: Knight of the Lyons, I had thought before this time there had not been any Knight able to match mee on horſebacke, but now I find my ſelfe deceiued: wherfore I ſuppoſe thou maiſt thanke thine Armorer, which hath ſo well fitted thee, but I doubt not now being on foote, to deale with you ſomewhat better. It is well ſayd, anſwered the other, and were not my cauſe more iuſt then thine, I ſhould greatly feare mee of the victory: but conſidering the wrong which thou doſt vnto that vertuous Lady Lenarda, it cauſeth mee to

hope

hope the beſt: wherefore once more let me intreate thée to conſent to returne vnto her. Nay, anſwered Adreſto, I both defie thy intreates, and her loue, and therefore defend thy ſelfe. Then againe hurred they together more fiercely then at the firſt, but not with like aduantage, for Adreſto before was greatly ayded by the quickneſs of his horſe: and now béeing on foote, although he were very quick and nimble, yet the paine which he ſuſtained by his wounds were a great hinderance vnto him. On the contrary ſide, the Knight of the Lyons, béeing before on the backe of a horſe daily vſed to trauell, was not altogether of the quickeſt, but now béeing on foote, and in his chiefe prime, not hauing receiued any wound, was farre more quick then his aduerſarie, by which meanes he both ſaued himſelfe, and hurt his enemy euen at pleaſure. And at length, taking Adreſto at aduantage, gaue him a ſound blow on the ſide of the head, which cauſed him to ramble, and before hee could recouer himſelfe, gaue him one or two more, ſo that hee was forced in a traunce to fall to the earth: which the Knight perceiuing, ſtept vnto him, and before hee would giue him ayre, toke of his gauntlet, and then finding the ring, tooke it frō his finger: and vnlacing his Helme, he ſoone brought him to himſelfe, and perceiuing him to offer to riſe, ſaid, Adreſto yéeld thy ſelfe, and promiſe to forſake this wicked kinde of life, and to goe into Spayne to the Dutches Lenarda, or elſe thou dieſt.

Adreſto béeing throughly come to himſelfe, and hearing the name of Lenarda, began to call to mind his former loue towards her, and in a manner cleane forgetting the Merchants daughter, ſaid. Moſt noble Knight, I doo not onely yéeld my ſelfe vnto your mercy, but alſo willingly will doe as you commaund me, where I will yéeld mee to the noble Dutches mercy: whom I muſt néedes confeſſe, greatly to haue wronged. The Knight of the Lyons immediatly taking him vp from the ground, imbraſt him in his armes, ſaying: that if he did as he had promiſed, he ſhould do right well, and in ſo doing, hee ſhould find him for euer an aſſu-

red friend. For which Adreſto gaue him infinite thankes, vowing to him the like.

Now by this time was the Lady Lenardas Squire come vnto them, and ſaluting Adreſto, demaunded how he did, Adreſto beholding him, immediatly knewe him, and imbracing him in his armes, demanded how his Lady fared, to whom the Squire declared, the great ſorrow wherin ſhe had remained euer ſince his departure. And now hauing bound vp the wounds which he had receiued in the combat as well as they could, (for as ſoone as the King was taken from his finger, his wounds fell on bleeding) they returned into the Cittie, where they remained by the ſpace of three weekes, for the curing of his wounds, and prouiding all things neceſſary for their departure. Then taking leaue of the fayre Damſell whom he left with child, and the reſt of his acquaintance, they departed towards the Citty of Waterford, where they were in hope to finde the ſhip in which the Knight of ỳ Lyons had there arriued, leauing all *Dublin* ſorry for his departure.

CHAP. XIII.

How the Knight of the Lyons trauelling towards *Waterford* in the company of *Adreſto*, was like to haue beene murdered, by the meanes of the Damſell of *Dublin*, and by what meanes he was preſerued.

THe Knight of the Lyons, being accompanied with Adreſto, and his Squires, rode on ſo farre the firſt day, that they arriued in a ſmall village ſome 15 leagues from Dublin, where was onely one Caſtle, and ſome fewe cottages; in which Caſtle there dwelt a Knight ỳ was ſome kinne vnto the Damſell, which was ſo intirely beloued of Adreſto: and here the Knights minding to reſt themſelues for that night, were welcommed and entertained by the Lord of the Caſtle, called Mack Gillum, with the greateſt welth

ſhew of kindneſſe that might be, the more ſecretly to conceale the euill which he intended in his hart, (as it is for the moſt part the common vſe of thoſe Country people, which will not ſticke to laugh you in the face, and preſently to cut your throte:) euen ſo dealt this Traytor, who hauing receiued into his houſe as gests theſe two notable Knights, bidding them welcome with a Iudas kiſſe, and feaſting them with all the delicats that the ſhortneſſe of the time could afford, yet his enueterate malice towards the Knight of the Lyons, for carrying away Don Adreſto from his Coſin, was ſuch, that notwithſtanding all the former curteſies which he ſhewed him, minded in the end to rob him of his life: which he thought to bring to paſſe in this ſort.

There was vnder one of the fayreſt Chambers in the Caſtle, a darke and deepe vaute, hauing no way into the ſame but by a trappe-doore out of the fore-ſaid Chamber, ouer which he cauſed a bed to be made for the Knight, and hauing placed two or three villaines in the vaute, with charge to murder him, cauſed in ſtead of ropes, nothing but ſmall ſticks to be layd vnder the bed, which might ſuſtaine the weight thereof: ſo ſ the Knight once laying him downe theron, muſt of force tumble headlong into the vaut, where the villaines being ready to receiue him, ſhould ſone haue ended his life: had not GOD otherwiſe prouided for his ſafety, and appointed him to a farther ſetting foorth of his glory, and thus it was. His ſeruant Gillmo, whoſe life he ſaued, when as he ſlew the reſt of his company, the night before hee reſcued Molenda, and of a thiefe entertained him to be his ſeruaunt: hee I ſay, contrary to the common vſe of ſuch fellowes, who according to the old ſaying, (Saue a thiefe from the gallowes, and he will be the firſt that will cut thy throte) hauing an eſpeciall loue and care vnto his Maiſter, as thinking that time ill ſpent, which was not to his profit or content, & that in doing the ſame hee did God good ſeruice, was alwayes very carefull and diligent about him, eſpecially, where hee did any way ſuſpect euill to be meant towards him: but now more the at any other time,

knowing

knowing the wickednes of Mack Gillum, hee liſned and pried about, to ſee if hee could perceaue them whiſper amongſt themſelues. A little after ſupper, comming ſuddenly into a darke entry, he heard ſome talking, and liſtning a while vnto them: one of them ſayd: Well, ſ my Maiſter and they aboue, doe their part kindly, in cauſing the bed to fall, this dagger ſhall pierce his hart, farre ſooner then Adreſtos ſword could pierce his Armor. May replyed another, I will ſurely giue him the firſt wound, for robbing Valeria of her Louer. Gillimo hearing this, knew preſently that it was his Maiſter whom they ment, wherefore diligently noting the place, he returned ſafely into the roome where he left his Maiſter, and finding them ready to goe to their Chamber, hee could not conueniently make it knowne.

Now Mack Gillum hauing called for lights, willed his wife and two of his daughters, to accompany Adreſto vnto his chamber, and hee himſelfe would accompany the Knight of the Lions vnto his (where hee hoped ere long to be ſufficiently reuenged, for the wrong which hee had done vnto his Coſin.) Thus hauing brought him to his chamber, he continued diſcourſing of many matters, vntill he was almoſt vnready, then bidding him good night, he went towards the doore to haue gone forth, and comming ſomewhat neare the bed: on a ſudden Gillimo ſtept vnto him, and before he was ware thereof, toke him in his armes, and by cleane force threw him into the midſt of the bed: from whence immediatly the ſticks breaking, hee tumbled headlong into the Vaut, where he was preſently ſtabbe to death by the villaines, which he had prepared to haue kilde the Knight of the Lions: ſo that the ſaying of the Scripture in him was rightly fulfilled, he hath layd a ſnare for another, and himſelfe is faine into the miſchiefe thereof.

The Knight of the Lions, ſ the reſt of them that were in the chamber, at the firſt were greatly aſtonied hereat: but ſeeing the ſequell, and conſidering that it was deuiſed

of

of purpoſe for to haue murdered him, fell on their knées, and gaue thankes vnto almighty God, who had deliuered him, out of this imminent danger of death. Then calling for his Armor, he forthwith armed himſelfe, and giuing Gillimo thankes for his good ſeruice, willed him to tel by what meanes he came to ỹ knowledge of this treaſon: to whom Gillimo declared the ſame before recited. Then went hée vp and downe the Caſtle, killing ſuch as hee thought any way culpable in the ſame: and comming into the chamber where Adreſto was, in the company of the Lady and her daughters, who by this time had heard of all that which was hapned, they came and fell downe at his féete pittifully weeping, beſeeching him to haue compaſſion of them, and not to reuenge the fault committed by one, vpon them all, aſſuring him they were not any way priuy to ỹ which had hapned. The Knight, partly through compaſſion, which he alwaies bare towards Ladies and Damſells, and partly at the intreaty of Adreſto, whom had hee not intirely loued, hee ſhould likewiſe haue ſuſpected to be conſenting to this treaſon, willed them to ſtand vp, and warning them euer hereafter, for attempting ỹ like treaſon againſt any one, he forgaue them: then taking order for their ſafety that night, they betooke them to their reſts, where they ſlept ſoundly vntill the next day: when taking their leaue of the Lady and her daughters, whom they left buſie in burying of the dead bodies, they departed onwards on their iourny towards Waterford, where within two daies they ſafely arriued, not hauing met with any aduenture worth the reciting: ỹ comming to the Harbor, they found the Barke in a readineſſe, all the company earneſtly expecting his comming. Where we will for a while leaue them, loking for a winde for Spaine.

Æ. CHAP.

CHAP. XIIII.

How the *Scottiſh* King ſent ouer into *Denmarke*, vnder the conduct of his Coſin the Earle of *Douglaſſe*, tenne thouſand Souldiers, and how the Arch-Biſhop and the other Traytors, ioyned their forces with him.

You may remember how in the former part of this Hiſtory, that the Arch-Biſhop of Maiance, the Count Hermes, and others of the chiefe ſtates of Denmarke, diſliking the gouernment, whereof themſelues were in a manner the chiefe and firſt beginners, had practiſed with the Scottiſh King, for the ſending ouer forces, promiſing to deliuer the Kingdome of Denmarke into his hands, and farther, to that end had deliuered pledges for ſure performance thereof.

Now therefore the King of Scots, hauing muſtred vp his forces, made choiſe of tenne thouſand of his approued and beſt men of Armes, and hauing fitted them of all things needfull for that warre, gaue them in charge vnto his kinſman the Earle of Douglaſſe: a man for his vallour and courage highly to bee commended, and for his wiſdome and pollicie, to bee compared with moſt in Chriſtendome: as hauing great experience, eſpecially in matters of affaires, wherein he had ſpent the greateſt part of his time, being now about the age of forty eight or fifty yeares: vnto him did the King deliuer this Armie, with free commiſſion to diſpoſe thereof, & of the whole affaires of Denmarke. With this Armie he departed towards the Sea-coaſt, accompanied with many braue and hardy Knights who vollentary went to beare him company, with hope in theſe warres to gaine fame by their vallour: and being come to the towne of Helſue, they tooke chipping, and the winde ſeruing thē, they directed their courſe towards Denmarke, hauing before hand ſent intelligence of their comming, vnto the traytors to their Country, their confederats, who likewiſe

wiſe vpon this newes, vſed all the diligence they could, for the leauying of their forces to ioyne with the forren power: cauſing Libels, and other meanes to be wrote, to ſeduce others likewiſe from their loyaltie towards their Gouernors and Country, and to fall into the ſame treaſon with them. Of which ſort there were a great many, who for diuers cauſes were ſone drawne into the ſame, eſpecially ſuch as by any meanes had offended the lawes, and feared the penaltie thereof: which by the Gouernors was ſeuerely executed.

Who now vpon this rumor and hurliburly, were not a little troubled, and perceauing ſuch great men to be actors herein, feared a generall reuolt, wherefore drawing themſelues together into counſell, they deuiſed all the meanes they could, to preuent the ſame: and hauing ſent vnto the Arch Biſhop and his complices, by faire meanes to haue cauſed them to lay downe their weapons, and not like madmen as it were to rip their owne bowels, which they muſt needes doe in ſtirring vp this ciuill contention, which is the greateſt enemie that poſſible may happen to any common wealth, and that in calling in forren powers, was not only to bring into bondage their Country, and native ſoyle, but alſo themſelues and their whole poſteritie: for what Conquerer is there, that hauing brought into ſubiection any Kingdome or Prouince, will not cauſe his owne lawes & cuſtomes to be imbraced by the vanquiſhed, which he cannot well doe, except firſt he not only rote out thoſe, whom he thinkes may be any way a hinderance vnto his proceedings, then likewiſe muſt hee place as Gouernors and Rulers ouer his people, ſuch as he ſhall thinke readieſt to obey and fulfill his commaundements, which can be no other but of his owne native Country: and then how grieuous it will bee vnto you to be commaunded by ſtrangers, doe but conſider. But peraduenture you will ſay, that the King of Scots hath promiſed, not only to continue you in your former eſtates, but alſo preferre you to higher dignities, and you will relie vppon his royall pro-

miſe. Conſider wee beſeech you, how that he, nor no man liuing whatſoeuer he be, hath any terme or aſſurance of his life in this worlde, and that though hee keepe his promiſe with you, yet your felicity is of no longer aſſurance then his life: but ſuppoſe he ſhould liue a long time, knowe you not, that he that by ambition gaineth a Crowne, no ſooner commeth to the poſſeſſions thereof, but he preſently cutteth downe the prope, by which himſelfe did clime thereunto, fearing by the ſame likewiſe to fall as he did riſe.

This, or the like exhortation, the Gouernors at the firſt vſed towards the rebellious Traytors, which could nothing at all moue them to giue ouer their pretended treachery: and then ſeeing there was no way, but by force to withſtand their fury, knowing alſo that the Scottiſh forces were on the coaſt, and daily expected to land, they tooke order forth with for the leauying of forces, placing new and great ſupplies in their garriſon Townes, furniſhing them both with munition and victailes, as well as the ſhortnes of the time would permit them. And now hauing gathered togethers thirty thouſand ſouldiers, the greateſt part whereof were men taken from the Plow and Cart, fitter with the ſharpe Colter to teare vp the ground, then with ſword and ſpeare to incounter with the enemy in the fielde, and their Leaders moſt of them as vnſkilful as their ſoldiers, knowing how better to daunce a galliard or a Pauine in a Ladies Chamber, then to marſhall a band of men readie to incounter their enemies: ſo much had the lacke of vſe of Armes, ſince the loſſe of their King, altered that flouriſhing kingdom, which in former time did greatly abound with many ſtout & hardy Knights, a great number whereof were either dead or loſt in the ſearch of their King. The one halfe of which Armie being giuen in charge vnto the Lords of Openeade & Londen, marched towards the Archbiſhop and his confederates, who with the number of 12 or 14. thouſand ſouldiers, being on the other ſide the riuer of Eſtare, began to ſpoyle and ſack the Country, putting to ſword, all thoſe that made any reſiſtance againſt them, and

hauing

hauing taken Cargue and Londen, two Townes of great strength, placed therein garrisons, then marching towards Opencade, they heard of the comming of the Lords of Opencade & Londen, and fearing to be taken at aduantage, they altered theyr course towards Rensborge, where the Earle Dowglasse with his forces was landed, hoping to ioyne with him: which the Lords of Opencade & Londen vnderstanding, pursued him so eagerly, that beeing come within sight almost of the Scots, they set vpon their rereward, putting a great number of them to the sword: and euen at the same instant, was the other Army, which which was ledde by the Lord Itsenho, and the County of Mildrop, likewise come in sight, which caused a great feare in the harts of the Traytors, so that had it not beene for a company of two thousand Scots, which came to their rescue vnder the conduct of Sir Iames Lewrence, Cosin german vnto the Earle, they had been all eyther slaine, or put to flight: but the comming of this succor, so animated theyr almost fainting courages, that, where before they were in a manner ready to turne theyr backes, they now began to recouer theyr ground that they had lost, the fight growing very hote and bloody on both sides, there being slaine of the States aboue a thousand souldiers, and of the Rebels 800.

Longer had the fight continued, but that the Lord Harding, and the Count Hermes, fearing the comming of the other power, which was hard at hand, caused the retraite to be sounded, and so with an easie pace marched to the Scottish Campe, not minding if they could chuse, to fight in two or three daies, because of the wearines of his souldiers, who comming newly from Sea, were many of them distempered. The States likewise, hauing ioynd both theyr Armies, intrenched themselues: thus lay they by the space of seauen dayes, within view of each other, daily skyrmishing together, in which the States alwaies had the worst, through theyr vnskilfulnesse in martiall discipline, where we will for a while leaue them, and returne to speake of other matters.

CHAP. XV.

Howe the Prince *Iago* naming himſelfe the Knight of Fortune, departed out of *England*, and arriuing in *Fraunce*, trauailing through the Forreſt of *Towers*, hee deliuered a Lady from a mighty Giant.

Prince Iago, hauing deliuered the Lady Beleriza, naming himſelfe the Knight of Fortune, was greatly honoured in the Engliſh Court, where at the intreatie of the King, hee ſtayed by the ſpace of a month, where daily hee heard many ſtrange reports of the Inchaunted Caſtle in the Kingdome of Fraunce, and being deſirous to try the aduenture thereof, his Squire giuing him to vnderſtand that there was a ſhippe ready bound for the Riuer of Nainſe, determined to paſſe ouer therein: wherefore taking his leaue of the King and Queene, and others who had ſhewed him great honour during his abode in England, the Lady Beleriza hauing made him many large proffers, for the vnſpeakeable kindneſſe which ſhee had receiued at his handes, all which hee refuſed: but becauſe hee would not ſhew himſelfe altogether diſcourteous, hee receiued a faire Diamond, which he promiſed alwaies for her ſake to weare vpon his finger. And now hauing prouided all ſuch things as he had need of, and agreeing with the maiſter of the ſhip for his paſſage, he went aboord, and hauing the wind faire, they ſet to ſea in ſo happy a time, that within fiue dayes, they arriued at a Port called Old-bay, where going on ſhore, they directed their courſe towards the Citty of Nainſe, where he ſtaying a while to reſt himſelfe, he vnderſtood that the Queene, with a great traine of Lords & Ladies, were lately arriued at the Citty of Towers, whether, becauſe it lay not much out of his way, he determined to trauell to ſee the faſhion of the French Court, which then flouriſhed with noble Dames, among whō was the Princeſſe Emilia, and

her

her fayre daughter Oliua, whom as before wee haue ſaide, was begotten by the famous Prince Edward, her betrothed huſband, the night before he departed towards the inchanted Caſtle, together with a goodly ſonne called Hendritio: both which Children, were very carefully educated by the good King Carolus theyr grand-father. And being nowe come vnto the age of ſixteene yeeres, the young Hendritio was exerciſed in riding of horſes, & running at tylt, wherin he ſhewed himſelfe not any way vnlike to the noble Prince his Father, hauing a great deſire to be knighted, which by no meanes his Grand-father would permit, fearing leaſt he would hazard himſelfe in that aduenture, whereof there had ſo many failed.

The Princeſſe Oliua in like ſort, being of moſt ſingular and rare beautie, could ſcarce be ſuffered to be once out of the ſight of her Grand mother, who loued her more then any of her owne Children: and being now as we haue ſaid, at the Citty of Towers, (the Queene partly for her owne content, but chiefely for to delight the Princeſſe Emilia her Daughter, who continually ſince the loſſe of the Engliſh Prince, had ſpent her time in great ſorrow, onely the comfort which ſhee had in her children, did a little mittigate the ſame) did daily vſe to ride forth on hunting, into the forreſt which was euen hard adioyning to the Citty, in which forreſt, there was great ſtore of all manner of wilde Beaſtes. And being the ſame day that the Knight of Fortune was comming to the Court, gone forth very early, the Huntſmen had rouſed a mighty Hart, which making way before the hounds, cauſed all the Lords and Ladies to follow after, and galloping very ſwiftly through the Forreſt, had quickly ſeparated themſelues into many companies, ſo that with the Queene there was left no more but the Princeſſe Oliua, and two or three other Ladies, and ſome three or foure Knights, when ſuddenly a mighty great Giant, all armed, iſſued out from the thickeſt of the wood, and with a meruailous fierce countenance came towards them, to the great aſtonishment of the Queene & the other Ladies, who

began

began to flie as faſt as their horſes could carry them. One of the Knights that was with the Queene, being more hardie then his fellowes, ſtayd to make reſiſtance whilſt the others eſcaped: but alas, ſmall was the defence which hee could make being vnarmed, againſt ſo mighty a foe, whoſe huge Armour he was not able to pierce, although thereon he brake his Woreſpeare which he had in his hand all to ſhiuers: and drawing out his ſword to try if that would doe any better, before hee could deliuer any ſtroke there-with, was himſelfe clouen to the middle. And leauing him there, the Giant perſued the others, which by this time had gained a great way before him: and comming into a rough ſtony way, the horſe whereon ỳ Princeſſe Oliua rode ſtumbled and fell to ỳ ground, not being able to recouer againe. Which ſhe perceiuing, beganne to flie on foote, whereby in ſhort ſpace, the Gyant had gained a great deale of ground of her, ſo that within leſſe then a quarter of a mile hee muſt néeds haue ouertaken her, had not the Knight of Fortune, (being as is aforeſaid, riding towards the Citty Towers) hapned to arriue: who at the firſt ſéeing a farre of one running ſo faſt, was preſently touched with the remembrance of his former vilion: and calling to his Squire, put on his Helmet, and taking his Launce in his hand, rode towards them, when preſently the Lady (being cleane wearied and out of breath) caſt herſelfe downe before him, not being able to ſpeake a word.

The Knight viewing her ſinguler beauty, knew preſently that it was the ſame Lady who in his fancie hee had vowed to ſerue: wherefore incouraging himſelfe, thinking that now was the time, if euer, to ſhew himſelfe valerous, being in her preſence, and in her cauſe, for whoſe ſake hee could indure a thouſand deaths, ſpake vnto her in this maner. Moſt beautifull Lady, comfort your ſelfe, and feare not this huge lump of fleſh which hath purſued you, for I doubt not, but God will ſo ſtrengthen mine arme, as I ſhall ſone be able to make him confeſſe his folly, in going about to wrong ſo heauenly a creature. Then ſetting ſpurres to his

horſe,

horſe, he ranne againſt the Giant, who by this time was come almoſt vnto them, and hitting him full in the midſt of the maſſy ſhield which he wore, hanging by a ſtirrup about his necke, gaue him ſuch a blow, that piercing the ſame, he cauſed him to ramble backwards, being hardly able to ſtand vpon his legges, breaking his Launce all to peeces. Thus hauing ended his courſe, he turned about, and fearing that in fighting on horſebacke, hee might be in great danger if the Giant ſhould kill his horſe, hee alighted, and dreſſing his Shield on his arme, hee drew forth his ſword, going boldly to mete his huge enemie: who hauing recouered himſelfe of the incounter, likewiſe went towards the Knight, with a mighty Semiter in his hand, thinking at the firſt blow to haue cleft him in two. But he being warie, eaſily auoided the ſame, by ſhifting his body aſide, the Giant hauing miſſ his blow, was not able to recouer his Semiter ſo lightly, (which was entred almoſt a foote into the ground) but that the Knight taking the aduantage thereof, gaue him a ſore blow on the left arme, almoſt at the ſhoulder, which piercing his thicke Armour, cut him to the bone, the griefe whereof was ſuch, that hee could not afterwards rule his maſſy targe ſo well as otherwiſe he would, by which meanes he had great aduantage: for now the Giant being forced to lay on, and onely to truſt to his ſword both for offence and defence, many times receiued wound vpon wound: ſometimes likewiſe faſtning blowes on his aduerſary, hee would cauſe him to bend his knees to the ground, renting his Armor where he touched, and cauſing the blood to iſſue out thereof in many places. Thus continued they a long time, the aduantage, if there were any, remaining with the Knight of *Fraunce*.

By this time had the Princeſſe Olua recouered herſelfe againe, and although ſhee ſaw the Knight to haue the better ſide, yet the feare which ſhe had was ſuch, that ſhee would haue fled away ſhe wiſt not whether, had it not been for the Knights Squire, who comming vnto her, perſwaded her with many arguments to ſtay and ſee the end, which hee

was certaine could not be without the death of the Gyant, for that his Lord did continually increase vpon him, and whose vallour he knew to be such, that the longer hee continued, the more increased his courage: but put case the Giant should haue the victory, yet would it of force be with such danger to himselfe, that they needed not to feare his pursute. The Princesse being something herewith comforted, was contented to stay the end, yet not beeing fully resolued of feare, she intreated the Squire to helpe mount her on his Maisters horse, which he did, then sitting to beehold the combat, she questioned with him of many matters touching his Maister, whom in her hart shee greatly commended, demaunding what and of whence hee was. To which his Squire replied, that hee was discended of noble blood, but for his name and Country, he might not disclose to any one, being commaunded to the contrary, only this, he called himselfe the Knight of Fortune. Then declaring vnto her his first combat at Sea, and the battaile with Signior Roberto, when hee deliuered the Lady Beleriza: where hearing of the strange reports of the inchaunted Castle, he determined to make triall thereof, not forgetting to declare vnto her his Maisters Vision at Sea, which more then all the rest did cause her to admire, thinking with her selfe that it was only by the worke of God: then considering what it was to bee loued by such a Knight, whose equall she neuer had before seene, beganne deeply to fancie him. Thus past they away the time, whiles the two fierce Champions continued their combat, both giuing and receauing many woumds, all the ground being stayned with their blood: and now the Giant being altogether inraged, rebelling and cursing his false Gods, foming at the mouth like a mad man, ranne vppon the Knight, thinking to haue taken him in his armes, but hee perceauing his intent, and lothing such imbracements, preuented him by auoyding through the quicknesse of his body, deliuering withall so sound a blowe on his right arme, which he had stretched forth, that he caused both it

and

and his beanie Semiter to flye into the field, then perſuing his victory, he neuer left wounding of him, till ſuch time as he cauſed him to fall dead to the ground.

And then parting his head from his ſhoulders, he kneeled downe on his knées, rending thankes to God for the victory: and taking vp the head, hee went and preſented the ſame to the Princeſſe, deſiring her to accept the ſame, as the firſt ſhowe of his loue, who had vowed himſelfe wholy to her ſeruice. The Princeſſe dying her chéekes with a modeſt bluſh, giuing him harty thankes for preſerving her life, ſhe intreated him to conduct her to the Citty, where ſhe would cauſe him to be honored according to his deſert. The Knight eaſily conſented hereto, and hauing bound vp this wounds, cauſed his Squire to place her behind him, in this ſort rode they onwards, the Knight declaring vnto her his loue, which he had vowed long before he had ſéene her, only by his viſion which he had ſéene, when firſt he left his owne Country. Whilſt they were thus diſcourſing of loue, they perceaued a great troope of Knights, comming galloping towards them, which when they were come nére vnto them, the Princeſſe knewe them to be the Quénes Knights: who being gathered together, and finding her wanting, were ſent to purſue the Giant, and now hauing found her ſo well reſcued, they were not a little glad thereof: meruailing greatly how ſhe had eſcaped. And demaunding of her, were giuen to vnderſtand, the whole diſcourſe before recited, wherein ſhee did not faile to extoll the Knights valloz to the vttermoſt: but hee attributed his victory more to her beauty then his owne ballour. Thus rode they on till they came to the Citty, one of the Knights carrying the Giants head, to ỹ great wonder of the whole Citty, who highly commended ſo ballerous a déede. And comming to the Court, they were receaued with great ioy by the Quéne, and the Princeſſe Emilia. who aſſuredly eſtéemed her loſt: but when they vnderſtood the manner how ſhee was deliuered, they gaue God harty thankes, greatly honoring and commending

the Knight of Fortune, feasting and intertaining him with all the kindnesse that might be, and being lodged in the Pallace, was euery day during the cure of his woundes, visited by the Princesse Emilia and her daughter, vnto whom many times hee declared his passions: which the Princesse perceauing to be extreame, beganne something to pitty him, which Cupid perceauing, and minding to showe his diuine power, wounded her to the hart with one of his impoysoned shafts, whereby shee could neuer bee in quiet but in his presence: which hee perceauing, beganne farre sooner then otherwise he could haue done, to recouer his strength, so that within fifteene daies he was throughly whole, and being able to beare Armor againe, determined to trauel towards ỹ inchaunted Castle, but first he thought good once more to try the Princesse, as you shall heare in the Chapter following.

CHAP. XVI.

How the Knight of Fortune, made himselfe knowne to the Princesse *Olina*, and hauing obtained her loue, departed towards the Inchaunted Castle, and how he was there taken prisoner.

THe Knight of Fortune, being throughly healed of his wounds which he had receiued in fighting with the Giant Latron, when as he deliuered the Princesse Olina, and minding to make triall of the aduenture of the inchaunted Castle, one day finding the Princesse solitarie, walking in the Pallace garden, came vnto her, and after salutations past betweene them, began as followeth.

Most excellent & beautious Princesse, if the cruell paines of a faithfull Louer, may any way moue compassion in a Ladies hart, or the endlesse sighes and teares of a Knight wounded by Cupids shafts, may deserue to be pitied, then I beseech you Madam to behold him, that not onely languisheth, but is euen ready, through the extreame passions which

which I feele, to ſuffer death for your loue, being appoin-
ted by the Deſtinies to loue you, before euer I had ſight of
this your heauenly and diuine beauty, ſince which time it
hath ſo increaſed in me, that I finde no other remedy if you
proue cruell, but death onely: which if you ſhould, would
be to me moſt welcome.

The Princeſſe hearing this, which vnto her was moſt
pleaſant, anſwered, Knight of Fortune, what other name
to call you by I am vtterly ignorant of, the loue which you
ſay you beare vnto me, may be great, neither do I thinke
the contrary, as the hazarding of your ſelfe to ſaue my life,
I muſt needes confeſſe deſerues ỹ greateſt recompence that
I can beſtow on you. But how farre vnfitting it is for one
of my eſtate, to place my affection on a ſtranger, whoſe
name nor Country I know not, yea peraduenture on ſuch
a one, who though now he ſeemes to loue, yet hauing gay-
ned what he ſeekes for, may as ſone leaue me: but put caſe
I were ſo fondly bent, as not loking before I leapt, ſhould
place my affection on you, do you thinke, that eyther the
King my Grandfather, or ỹ reſt of my friends would giue
conſent to my choiſe, ſurely I am perſwaded they would
neuer yéld thereto.

The Knight hauing attentiuely liſtned to her diſcourſe,
and withall noting her change of coller whilſt that ſhe was
ſpeaking, eſpecially when ſhée ſéemed to make doubt of his
conſtancie, replyed. Worthy Princeſſe, whoſe beautie ex-
celleth the moſt fayreſt, and whoſe wiſedome excelleth that
beautie, my name, which vnto none ſince I left my owne
Country I haue declared, is Iago, my native ſoile the Du-
chie of Saxony where my aged Father gouerns, not know-
ing what is become of me his vnhappy ſonne, who for the
deſire of ſéeking ſtrange aduentures, ſtale ſecretly out of his
Court, what ſince hath befalne me, I thinke partly by my
ſelfe, and my Squire you haue already heard. But where
you ſéeme to doubt of my loyaltie, I beſéech God no longer
to permit my life, then vnto you I proue faithfull: & where-
as you likewiſe doubt your friends conſents, thinke not but

both your Grandfather, yea and the Prince your Father likewiſe, who I doubt not ere long to ſee at libertie, wil eaſily giue their conſents, ſeeing you deſirous to accord thereto. The Princeſſe no longer able to conceale ꝑ loue which ſhe bare him, and knowing him to be the Prince of Saxonie, whoſe forwardneſſe long before by fame had bẽ bruted in the French Court, together with that of his ſuppoſed Brother, the Gentleman of the Forreſt, demaunded whether it were himſelfe or his Brother, that had atchieued the aduenture of the inchaunted Sword. The Knight anſwered that it was his ſuppoſed brother, whoſe abſence was the chiefeſt cauſe of his trauell. And herewithall hee declared vnto her, the ſtrange finding of Euordanus, together with the great loue and affection betweene them, as is before declared: at which diſcourſe the Princeſſe toke great delight, and in the end, hauing fully reſolued with herſelfe, ſhe was contented to take him for her huſband. And hauing thus vowed each to other fayth and loyaltie, hee tooke his leaue of her with many a chaſt kiſſe: the nert day preparing himſelfe to trauell towards the inchaunted Caſtle, where within fiue dayes after hee arriued, reaſonable betimes in the morning. And beeing come euen to the Bridge foote, hee was willed by a Squire to paſſe no further, then preſently came forth the Giant Brandofell, mounted on a mightie Courſer, bearing in his hand a Launce big enough to haue bẽ the Maſt of a ſmall ſhyppe. Which when the Knight of Fortune beheld, hee greatly admired the ſame, yet not beeing any thing afraid, he ſet ſpurres to his horſe, addreſſing his ſhield, and placing his Launce in his reſt, which he directed right againſt the Giants breaſt, who by reaſon of his huge ſtature, bare his Launce ſo hie, that cõming together, he ranne the ſame cleane ouer his head, not ſo much as once touching him therewith: but the Knights Launce hitting in the midſt of the Giants ſhielde, brake into a thouſand ſhiuers, cauſing the huge tower to bend backwards, but yet keeping his ſaddle, they met together ſo furiouſly with their bodies, that they were both horſe & men

turn-

tumbled to the ground, (to the great meruaile of the Prince Don Edward and the other Knights, which were ſtanding on the battlements of the Caſtle beholding the ſame, who greatly commended him in their harts,) then quickly recouering themſelues, they drew forth theyr ſwords, and comming together, they began a moſt cruell and dangerous combat: the Knight ſtill fearing his mighty blowes, did often voyde the ſame by the quickneſſe of his bodie: but yet many times receiued wound vppon wound, himſelfe likewiſe giuing many.

Thus continued they the ſpace of two howres without any great aduantage to be diſcerned betwéene them: the Giant at length beginning to be out of breath, beganne to giue back a little, which the Knight perceiuing followed him the faſter, and the Giant ſtill giuing back, hapned to ſtumble on a péece of the Knights Launce, wherewith he fell to the ground: ſo that before he could recouer himſelfe, he had receiued two great wounds, the one in his thigh, the other in his right arme, whereby (béeing againe gotten on his féete) he could not ſo well handle his Semiter as before hée did, which was ſoone the occaſion that the Knight of Fortune got the victorie, yet very déerly, for hauing the Giant at this aduantage, he determined to end the Combat quickly, and crouching neere, the better to giue a full blow at his head, he performed the ſame with ſuch force, that hée cauſed him to tumble to the ground, receiuing withall ſo mightie a blow from the Giant on the right ſide, that cleauing his ſhield in two, he was thereby ſore wounded in the ſhoulder and in his arme.

But euen as he was going to be reuenged thereof, by cutting of his head, the Gyant Furoll came vnto him, and by force taking him in his armes, doe what he could, he carried him into the Caſtle, where being diſarmed, he had his wounds very carefully looked vnto, at the intreaty of the Prince, who greatly liked him for his ualour, which he had ſhowed in the combat with Brandofell. And beeing cured of his wounds, was alwaies by the Prince held as

a companion, vnto whom hee declared the deliuery of his daughter from the Gyant Latron, and of the great sorrow which the Princesse Emilia indured for his imprisonment. All which was a great increase of the loue and amity betweene them, whereby they passed away the time of their imprisonment with ỹ greater content, which was not now very long: for God pitying the losse of so many braue and hardy Knights, sent not long after the imprisonment of the Knight of Fortune, the Knight of the Lions, and Adresto, as you shall heare hereafter. But first we will speake of the sorrow of the Court of Saxonie, for the sudden departure of their Prince.

CHAP. XVII.

Of the great sorrow that was made by the Duke of *Saxonie*, & the whole Court, when the Prince was found missing, and how by finding a Letter in his chamber window, it was knowne what was become of him.

I Haue a long time forgotten to declare vnto you, the great sorrowe and griefe, which the noble Duke Mauris, the Dutches, and all the rest of the Court sustained, when the Prince Iago was found missing, which was the next day after his departure: for the Duke his father finding him wanting the next day, demaunded where he was, as being giuen to vnderstād ỹ his Squire Stephano, only in his companie departed towards the Sea side, & that since they were not returned. Wherefore the Duke caused inquiry to be made for him, and hearing no certaine newes thereby, hee grew meruailous discontented therewith: and comming into the Dutches her chamber, hee found both her and her daughter in as great perplexitty, not knowing what to coniecture of his absence, and demaunding whether they knewe the cause thereof, the Dutches told him that since the departure of the Gentle-

man

man of the Foreſt, ſhe had neuer ſéene her ſonne to ſhowe any content, & being denied often to follow him in ſéeking ſtrange aduentures, her minde did giue her, that hee was now departed by ſtelth, to follow that which otherwiſe hée could not be permitted to doe. The Duke being almoſt of the ſame opinion, beganne to rent his haire from his head, and to rage and take on mightily: the Dutches, his daughter, and all the reſt that were preſent bearing him compapany in his griefe, but euen as they were in ỹ midſt of this ſorrow: the Prince Iagos Chamberlaine came and brought a letter, which the Prince had left behind him in his chamber windowe, the contents whereof followeth.

To my Soueraigne and louing Father the Duke of *Saxonie*.

MOſt high and mighty Prince and louing father, let not I beſéech you, this my ſudden and diſobedient departure, any way ber or trouble your noble minde, but conſider and iudge of the ſame, not with this your ripe and ſtaied grauitie, but looke into the ſame with a remembrance of your more young and youthfull yéeres, when by your noble prowelle & heroyick déedes of Armes, you cauſed all the Regions of Europe, and Aſia, to reſound with ỹ eccho of your name: conſider I beſéech you, what a griefe it is to a noble and valerous minde, to be kept alwaies in the bounds of his owne native Country, yea like a Hauke to be as it were cubbed vp in a mewe, and thinke withall I beſéech you, what the world doth already, and will hereafter ſay of me, if I ſhould ſtill ſpend my daies in this eaſie kind of life: will they not ſay that I doe degenerate from being ſonne vnto ſo noble a Sire as your ſelfe, and that this effeminate bringing vp, vnder the winges of my mother, and in a Court giuen altogether vnto pleaſure and idleneſſe, will in the end be the only ſubuertion of this florihing eſtate, when it ſhall pleaſe God to call you hence vnto a more happy and delightfull life. Call to minde I

beſeech you, the flouriſhing ſtate of the Romane Empire, and conſider how many noble youths roſe to honor by ſloth and idleneſſe: nay rather, were not by thoſe meanes the ouerthrowes of their families. What thinke you of Tarquinius Superbus, was not his ſloth and effeminate living in his youth, the cauſe of his inordinate luſt, and his luſt the cauſe of his ruine. What ſhall I ſpeake of Nero, Commodus, and diuers others whom I could recite, that only by effeminate & ill education, degenerated from their noble predeceſſors: on the contrary ſide, looke into Cæſar, the Catoes, yea and the Scipioes, who not lying at home, but euen in their childhood as it were, followed the warres to their great & immortall fame. What ſhall I ſay farther, to commend the following of ſtrange and hard aduentures, conſidering that you already know the ſame better then I can diſcribe: wherefore pardon I beſeech you this my departure, which I doubt not will be proſperous vnto me, and to the future benifit of your Country. I haue directed my iourny into England, from thence I intend to trauell in ſearch of my brother, the Gentleman of the Foreſt, in whoſe cõpany I doubt not but to gaine honor & renowne: thus beſeeching the Almighty, to continue your aged yeares in peace and happineſſe, I commit you into his protection.

Your vnworthy ſonne,
Don Iago.

The Duke hauing red this Letter, and now by the contents thereof knowing certainly what was become of his ſonne, was ſomewhat appeaſed of his griefe, and departing into his Cloſet, with more aduiſednelle to conſider of the contents thereof, began with reaſon to debate his ſorrow, and hauing throughly waged each matter with himſelfe, he could not chuſe but in his hart highly commend the noble minde of his ſonne, whom hee did not doubt but in time would proouue a famous Prince. Thus by little & little the old

old Duke recomforted himselfe, but the Dutches, and her daughter the Princesse Egilena, could not so soone shake of their sorrow, especially the Princesse, who now being destitute of her Brothers company, and also wanting ỳ sight of her Louer, whose very absence was a hell vnto her, and whose returne she feared would be very long, by reason of his vow at his departure: which was not to rest in any place, vntill hee had found out his Parents. Many times would she debate with herselfe heerof, somewhiles imagining, that hee trauailing through so many strange Countries, might peraduenture be wonne to the loue of some more beautifull Dame: then would she run straight waies to behold herselfe in her glasse, and with the minds of many women, thinking herselfe exceeding fayre, she would begin to blame him of inconstancie: then suddenly repenting herselfe for condemning him without true knowledge, shee would say, Ah Egilena, vnfortunate wench, how canst thou conceiue so ill a thought against him whom thou so dearely louest: O that it were lawfull for mee like a man to goe to seeke thée out, whereby to manifest the loue I beare thee, but alas I cannot, wherefore I will only direct my prayers vnto almighty GOD to preserue thée.

Thus would shée many times vnder colour of lamenting her Brothers absence, bewaile her friend, which together with the griefe of the Dutches her mother, caused the whole Court to remaine a long time in heauines, giuing ouer all their former pastimes & exercises of pleasure, wherein the Court did very much abound. Heere againe will we leaue them to speake of other matters.

CHAP. XVIII.

How the Knight of the Lyons and *Adreſto*, ſhipping themſelues for *Spayne*, were by force of weather driuen on the coaſt of *Fraunce*, where going on ſhore they heard of the *Inchanted Caſtell*, and how comming thether, the Knight of the Lyons ended the ſame.

THe Knight of the Lyons and Adreſto, hauing remained a long time at Waterford, ſtaying for a winde to ſaile towards Spaine, whether the Knight of the Lyons determined to accompany Adreſto, to ſee if hee could by ỹ wiſe Adriano, learne any thing touching his parents, whom he as yet knew not: and now hauing remained by the ſpace of eight weekes idlely in Ireland, the Marriners brought them newes of a North-eaſt winde, wherefore making haſt, being furniſhed with all things needfull for their voyage, they went aboord: and hauing hoiſed there ſailes, they committed themſelues to the mercy of the Seas, and the winde blowing a reaſonable good gale, they ſone had loſt ỹ ſight of the Iriſh land. The next day by none, the Maiſter of the ſhippe, told them that they had gone very faſt, for by ſounding he knew himſelfe to be within fiue leages of an Iland now called Sillie: wherefore directing their courſe ſomewhat to the Southward, they ſailed on merrily by the ſpace of three daies, but on the fourth day the winde altring and much increaſing his force, cauſed them after much ſtriuing to put themſelues with the land, which they found to be a port in Fraunce called Rokeſtay. Where comming on ſhore to refreſh themſelues, they were giuen to vnderſtand of the aduenture of the Inchaunted Caſtle, wherein ſo many braue and hardy Knigts had loſt themſelues. Which when the Knight of the Lions heard, and being very deſirous to proue the ſame, he intreated Adreſto to accompanie him thether, who being as deſirous as himſelfe to win

honor

honor, easily consented: vppon condition that himselfe might haue the first triall of the aduenture. And being hereon concluded, they directed their course towards the Forrest, where within tenne daies after they arriued, and being at length come to the Castle, in the morning somewhat early, hauing rested themselues the night before in a Village on the edge of the Forrest: where they were giuen to vnderstand, of the great vallour of the Knight of Fortune, who some fifteene daies before was taken prisoner, whose losse was greatly bewailed in ỳ French Court: the Knights being as I haue sayd come vnto the Castle, had not long staied, before such time as Brandosell beeing throughly cured of his wounds, which hee had receaued of the Knight of Fortune, came forth mounted on his wonted Courser, at whose hugenesse both ỳ Knights did greatly wonder, yet not being any whit dismaide, Adrello according to their agrément, toke the other part of the field against him, and setting spurres to their horses, they met together with such fury, that breaking their Launces to péeces, they passed on halfe astonied: & hauing ended their course, Adrello turning his horse drew forth his sword: but the Gyant who neuer before had fought on horse-back, was going to alight, which Adrello perceauing, called vnto him, telling him it was not the part of a Knight to forsake his horse, as long as he was able to kéepe him on his backe. Which the Gyant hearing, and thinking with himselfe, that if fighting on horse-backe, hee should find any disaduantage, hee might easily fley his enemies horse, it caused him drawing his heauy Scimiter to vse these spéeches. Knight, I was willing to haue delayed thy death for a while, which on forte might haue béene deferred by thy quicknesse: but now séeing it is thy own doings to fight on horse-backe, blame none but thy selfe for thy folly. Then comming both together, the Gyant had thought to haue deliuered a blow vpon his shield, but Adrello being very wary auoyded the same by the quicke shifting of his horse, giuing the Gyant a mighty blow on the right side, which

he taking with his shield, slyced away a great part thereof. Which the Giant perceiuing, wondred at his strength, so likewise did Prince Edward, Don Iago, and many other hardy Knights, who stode on the battlement of the Castle to behold the combat, greatly commending the braue managing of Adrasto.

But Prince Edward casting his eye on the Knight of the Lyons, who was still sitting on horsebacke, began to haue a meruailous opinion of him, so ỹ turning to Iago hee said: that if his mind did not misdéeme, that Knight on horseback was the better of the two, and that if they did both fayle in this attempt, it was in vaine for them euer to expect deliuerance. Now had Adrasto and the Giant, continued their battell by the space of halfe an howre on horsebacke, both of them hauing receiued many wounds, but especially the Giant, who for want of skill receiued many more then otherwise he néeded to haue done: which caused him to fret and chafe exceedingly. And béeing minded to delay ỹ fight no longer, he raised himselfe in his stirrups, and deliuered a full blow at his enemies head, who séeing it comming, and béeing afraid to take the same, hee lightly raind backe his horse, so that the Giant missing his marke, was not able to recouer his blow, which lighted so fully on his owne horse head, that he cleft it in two, and therewithall tumbled himselfe to the ground: but as great hap was, he stéed himselfe so well in the fal, that before Adrasto could take any aduantage against him, he had recouered his féete, which he perceiuing, likewise allighted, and addressing himselfe, they began a more fierce combat then that on horsebacke, the Giant still hauing the worst, till at last, Adrasto stepping backe to anoyde a blow which the Giant made at him, hee vnluckily stumbled, and withall fell to the ground, receiuing in the fall a great wound on his right thigh, which the Knight of the Lyons perceiuing, and fearing the death of his friend, he leapt lightly from his horse, and came to saue him, which was done with such spéede, that ỹ Giant could not execute the crueltie which otherwise he would, but was forced

forced to turne about to defend himſelfe from his newe aduerſary: who beganne to deliuer him ſuch blowes, as made the beholders ſoone iudge who ſhould haue the victory. For he gaue not one blow in vaine, but it did eyther breake in peeces his Armor, or wound his body, which now through loſſe of blood began to grow weake. On the contrary ſide, his blowes which he gaue vnto the Knight, had not ỹ force ſo much as once to pierce his ſhielde, ſo impregnable was the ſtrength thereof, which cauſed the Giant to curſe and blaſpheme his Gods, who were not able to deliuer him frõ one alone Knight. And being in this rage, he thought with one blow to haue finiſhed the battell, wherefore vniting all his forces together, he ſtrake the Knight ſuch a blow on the ſhield, that had it bẽn of any other mettell, he had cleft it in the midſt, but to this it did no harme at all, but with that blow he brake his Semiter, cauſing the Knight to ſet one knée to the ground: but being againe recouered, hee purſued the Giant with ſuch fierce blowes, that ſoone he cauſed him to fall at his féete: which Furioll perceiuing, cryed vnto him to ſaue his life, but the Knight not ſeeming to harken vnto him, cut off his head.

The Giant Furioll ſeeing his companion ſlaine, drew forth a mighty broad Fauchon, and running at the knight ſaid: Villaine, wherefore haſt thou ſlaine him that was not able to defend himſelfe, I hauing likewiſe cryed vnto thee to haue ſpared him, but ſeeing thou haſt ſo cruelly dealt with him, I will ſend thy ſoule for a ſacrifice vnto him. Doe thy worſt replyed the Knight, for I ſlew him becauſe I did not feare thée: and if thou looke not the better to thy ſelfe, I doubt not but to ſend thée to beare him company with the dead, whom liuing ỹ haſt bẽn a companion vnto in many miſchiefes, then hurling together, they beganne a cruell combat.

The Knight hauing borne ſome two or three of his weitie blowes, (which although by the goodnes of his Armour did not wound his body, yet were they of ſuch force ỹ they did compell him to bend with his knées to the ground, and

now

now minding with himselfe to auoyde the same) began to round & trauerse his ground, often auoyding his enemies force, & indangering his huge body both with blowes and thrusts, which hee gaue with such good and skilfull knowledge, that the blood issued forth abundantly, to the great ioy and admiration of the English Prince, and the rest of the prisoners, who in a manner hereby were in assurance of their deliuery: wondring in their minds what he might be, that with such force was able to cõtend with the Giant Furioll. Thus continued they fighting by the space of two howres, not so much as once taking breath, whereby the Knight had the aduantage, as being more vsed to such combats then the Giant, who now was in a manner cleane wearied, and so farre out of breath, that he did nothing but pant and blow, which the Knight perceiuing, pursued him the faster, dealing such blowes with the trustie blade of Adriano, that caused his body to lie open to the keene edge thereof, so that the grasse wheron they fought, was cleane couered with his blood, himselfe not hauing giuen any wound to his aduersay, although in many places he had bruised his Armor: and now being ouercharged with his enemies blowes, and growing faint through his great phlebottomy, fell to the ground in a swound. The Knight thinking to haue slaine him, was called vnto to hasten vnto the wicket, which if he did not make ẏ greater spæd, would be closed against him, wherefore leaning the Giant swelting in his owne blood, he ranne vnto the gate, and finding one closing the wicket against him, he gaue him such a blow that he cleft him to the breast: and entring in, hee began to deale his dole amongst thẽ that made any resistance, which were not many.

Then came vnto him the English Prince Don Iago and ẏ rest, giuing him infinit thankes for his great paines, which hee had taken for their deliuery: desiring him to put off his Helme, that they might see his face and know him, who had so nobly wrought their deliuerance. The Knight seeing loth to deny their request, especially that of ẏ Prince

Iago,

Iago, whom hee perfitly knew, and of whoſe being there he did not a little meruaile, whithout any more ceremonies put of his Helme. But when the whole company beheld his young yeares and great beauty, which by his heate was the more augmented, they did greatly admire his rare prowesse: but what man liuing is able to expreſſe the exceeding ioy, which the Prince Iago inioyed when hee beheld him: who running preſently vnto him, imbrast him in his armes, ſaying. O brother, how happy am I to inioy this your preſence in a time ſo needfull: whoſe abſence hath bẽn a greater griefe vnto me then my tongue can expreſſe. The Knight of the Lions being as glad to ſee him, vſed him with the like kindneſſe, demaunding by what aduenture he came thether, and how the Duke his father, his Mother, and the Princeſſe his ſiſter fared, all which was deferred vntill a more conuenient time. Then was hee imbraced of the Prince Edward, and the reſt, at whoſe intreaty he pardoned Sir Peſtrell the Dukes Coſin: and for the courtiſie which hee had ſhowed them, during their impriſonment, they vſed him very kindly. Then the Knight of the Lions commaunded Adreſto to be ſent for, and his wounds to be dreſſed, declaring vnto the Prince Iago, that it was the ſame Knight for whom he left Saxonie to goe into Ireland to combat with all. Heare after they had reſted themſelues by the ſpace of fiue daies, hauing ſent word of this fortunate deliuerance, to ỹ Court of Fraunce, they determined altogether to ride thether, where in three daies they arriued with eaſie iournies, by reaſon of the wounds of Adreſto. And at their comming forth of the Caſtle, with a mighty clap of thunder, the Caſtle and dead bodies of the Gyants were baniſht cleane out of ſight, to the great aſtoniſhment of them all.

And now being as I haue ſayd come to the Citty of Paris, they were royally welcomed, and intertained by the King, the Quæne, the Princeſſe Emilia, Olina: and all Nobles of the Court, vnto whom the Prince of England, declared the whole diſcourſe of every particuler accident,

touching their impriſonment and deliuery. Which when the King had heard, he made a ſolemne vow to be reuenged on the Duke of Orleance, and his whole family: but at the intreaty of the Prince, he pardoned Sir Peſtrell, who afterwards proued a good and hardy Knight. Thus paſſed they away the time in the French Court, by the ſpace of three weekes, each friend recounting to other their ſeuerall aduentures, and making preparation for the ſolemnizing of the marriage betweene Prince Edward & the Princeſſe Emilia, in which time Adreſto was fully recouered of his wounds, and being deſirous to ſee his old loue the Dutches Lenarda, haſtned on the Knight of the Lions to depart: whereunto he was very willing, by reaſon of the deſire he had to ſpeake with Adriano.

CHAP. XIX.

How the Knight of the Lions, departing from the *French* Court with *Adreſto*, landed in *Holland*, where comming to the Caſtle of *Corueu*, hee deliuered the King his Father.

AND now being ready prouided to depart, they came both into the great Hall, where with many ceremonious courtiſies, they toke their leaue of the King, ỹ Quéne, the Princeſſe Emilia, and Oliua, with all the reſt of the Nobles of the Court. The two Princes, Edward, and Iago, ſéeing they would néedes depart, accompanied them two daies iourny onwards on their way, during which time the Prince Iago deſiring pardon of his brother, for not bearing him company, made knowne vnto him his loue to the Princeſſe Oliua, which by his abode in Court, he doubted not but to obtaine, conſidering the great loue and amity, which was betwéene him and her father. The Knight of the Lions being well contented héere with, deſired him at his returne, or ſending into Saxonie, to remember his duty to the Duke, and Dutches, and his beautifull

beautifull ſiſter the Princeſſe Egiſena, whom hee intirely loued: aſſuring him that as ſone as he could learne any certainty, of that which he now went to ſeeke for, he would returne thether likewiſe, which hee did not doubt but would hapen very ſhortly. Then taking their leaue of each other, with many kind imbracements, the Prince Edward moſt earneſtly intreated him, to ſee him at his returne out of Spaine at the Engliſh Court, to which he eaſily conſented. Thus they departed, ẏ two Princes towards ẏ Court, & the Knight of the Lions & Adreſto, towards the Sea-ſide, where their ſhip remained for them: where beeing arrined, and ſetting into Sea, they ſailed merrily by the ſpace of two daies, but on the third day the wind altring, and the Seas growing very foule, they were forced to put to hull: and being thus toſt to and fro by the wind and Seas, by the ſpace of fiue daies, they were at laſt put on ſhore on the coaſt of the Dutchy of Holland: where going on ſhore, and taking their horſes and Armor, minding a little to take the aire after their ſtorme at Sea, they rode onwards in a narrow way, faſt by a pleaſant groues ſide, where they heard one very pittifully weeping, and liſtning attentiuely, they might heare theſe few words pronounced. And is it poſſible that God will ſuffer ſuch cruell and iniuſt cuſtomes to continue, to the deſtruction of ſo many braue and hardie Knights, as haue beene by this wicked cuſtome of Coruew deſtroyed. O falſe and diſloyall Griffory, that fearing to ſhew thy malice openly, haſt ordained ſo vild a cuſtome.

The two Knights hearing this complaint, and imagining thereby ẏ there was ſome cauſe extraordinary which moued the party ſo to complaine, alighted, and went into the Groue, where they found a Squire lying on the earth, his face all blubbred with teares, and demaunding him the cauſe of his ſorrow, was giuen by him to vnderſtand of the cuſtome of Coruew, where not long ſince the Duke of Liſenburge his Lord and Maiſter, hauing bin by the ſpace of 20. yeares trauelling in ſearch of his ſouereigne, the noble

King Frederick of Denmark, during which time he had accompliſhed many great and hardy deedes of Armes, and now returning home into his owne Country, with intent no longer to ſeeke after ỹ which was impoſſible to be found, trauailing along by a Caſtle not paſſing a daies iourney hence, where the Duke of this Country hath erected a cuſtome, that no Knight ſhall paſſe that way, but firſt he ſhall leaue his horſe and Armor behind him, vnleſſe hee conquer the Gardants, which is a thing impoſſible, becauſe of the number: and then he declared the ſame as it is more at large expreſſed in the firſt part of this hiſtory.

The Knight of the Lyons and Adreſto hearing of this cuſtome, and greatly pitying the loſſe of ſo many hardie Knights as were there daily impriſoned, beganne to grow into a great longing to make triall of the ſame: wherefore ſending backe Gillimo vnto the ſhip for ſuch things as they wanted, and to giue direction to the Marriners, that if with in ten dayes they did not returne, that then they ſhould direct their courſe for Spayne, whether they would peraduenture trauell by Land: and willing Gillimo to follow them with as much ſpéde as hee could, they departed towards Coruew, that night lying at a Village not paſſing a league and a halfe from the Caſtle. And the next day early in the morning hauing heard Diuine ſeruice, and taking a ſmall repaſt, they rode directly towards the Caſtle. Adreſto hauing deſired to make the firſt triall of his vallour, and now hauing come vnto the place where the Shield hung at the bridge-foote, Adreſto ſtroke the ſame ſo hard and rudely with the blunt end of his Launce, that he cauſed the whole Vally to reſound with the noyſe thereof. Preſently iſſued forth one of the Knights gardants, and mounting on his horſe, came vnto Adreſto demaunding what hee ſought. Entrance aunſwered Adreſto, which if it be denied I will purchaſe with my ſword. Then ſetting ſpurres to theyr horſes, they met together with ſuch fury, that the Knight of the bridge was ſent headlong to the ground: and after him came forth another, who was likewiſe ſent to beare him

company,

company, breaking his necke with the fall, Adreſto neuer ſo much as once mouing in his ſaddle: and to be briefe, ſo good was his hap, that with one ſpeare hee diſmounted the firſt fiue Knights, not any of them being able to riſe from the ground. Then taking choice of a freſh horſe, and a new Launce, for that his old one was remaining broken in the body of him whom hee laſt diſmounted, hee went on to the farther end of the Bridge, where he found two of the other fiue ready mounted, and vailing their Launces, they ranne together in ſuch ſort, that breaking both their Launces on his ſhield, it cauſed him a little to ſtagger: but he with whō Adreſto met, was ſent to meaſure his length on ẏ ground, then encountring with the other againe, hee ran his launce cleane through his body, himſelfe being a little wounded on the right ſide.

Then taking a new Launce, hee prepared to runne againſt the other three, but before he ranne, the Knight of the Lyons intreated him to giue ouer the Iouſts to him, as being more freſh and luſtie: but hereunto Adreſto would not in any ſort agree, but deſired him to permit him to end the aduenture if he could: and if hee did faile therein, then that he would proceede in the ſame himſelfe. And herewithall againe he ſette ſpurres to his horſe, and encountring with them all three at once, gaue him that was on the right ſide of him ſuch a blow, that he cauſed him to fall ouer his horſe taile: but the other two meeting him fully at one inſtant, brake their Launces in the midſt of his ſhield, cauſing both horſe and man to tumble to the ground, but ſoone had hee recouered his feete, and was againe remounted by his Squire, who brought him his owne horſe, & preſented him with a Launce. Then being mounted, he incountred againe with the other two, who at the ſecond courſe he likewiſe ſent to beare their fellowes company, himſelfe being ſore bruſed and wounded in two or three places of the body, whereby he loſt a great deale of blood: and likewiſe his horſe was ſo ouerwearied, that hee was no longer able to beare his body. Wherefore he diſmounted, minding to haue chan-

ged his horſe, but as hee was ſo doing, hee eſpied the fiue Knights with whom he was to deale withall comming towards him on foote, wherfore drawing forth his ſword, and dreſſing his ſhield on his arme, he went againſt them with a moſt bold and vndaunted courage: and being come together, was the firſt that gaue the onſet, which hee performed with ſuch ineſtimable prowelle, that within leſſe then twenty blowes, he had ſent one of them to ſeeke paſſage of old Caron: the reſt perceiuing the death of their fellow, began with more furie to aſſault him, whereby he was driuen to his trumps, for they were all foure ſtoute and hardy Knights. Thus continued the fight by the ſpace of an howre, many wounds being giuen on both ſides, ſo that the ground was all couered with blood: and now Adrello feeling himſelfe grieuouſly wounded, & his ſtrength through wearieſomneſſe & loſſe of blood to decreaſe, minding to ſhew courage to the end, vnited all his forces together, and determining to end his life with honour, ranne fiercely vpon them, giuing one of them ſuch a blow on the head, that hee cleft him to the teeth: then turning to another of them who had wounded him behind, gaue him ſuch a diſcharge, that for euer after he was free from any more ſuch combats, hauing both his armes cut off. The other two ſeeing this, and fearing the like, would willingly if they could haue deſiſted frō the battel: but he purſued them with ſo mighty blowes, that at length they fell both at his feete, the one of thē ſtarke dead, the other crying for mercy, which he obtained.

Then Adreſto being very faint, ſate downe on ỹ graſſe, which the Knight of the Lyons perceiuing, came towards him to helpe him, but before hee could come vnto him, Adreſto was faine into a ſwound: wherefore commending him vnto their Squires, hee prepared himſelfe againſt the other fiue Knights, which by this time were come euen vnto him: and at the firſt incounter, gaue one of them ſo rude a blow, that cutting away both ſhoulder and right arme, hee cauſed him to fall dead to the ground, then turning to another, he toke of at one blow his head.

The

The other three ſeing this, beſet him round about, laying at him withall their force, which was far weake to doe him any hurt: ſo impierceable was his Armor, which at this time ſtode him in good ſtede, for hee being ſure from wounding, needed not to take any paines but only in offending, which he did with ſuch agillity, that in leſſe then halfe an houre, hee had ſent them all to ſeeke paſſage into another world. Then had he time a little to breath himſelfe, and alſo to ſee Adreſto, who by this time, by the carefull induſtrie of the Squires, was come to himſelfe againe, and had his wounds bound vp, being ſomewhat weake and fainty, with his great loſſe of blood which he ſuſtained. And now the Knight of the Lions, ſeeing there was no great doubt of his recouery, went towards the Caſtle, to prouoke the Gardants, if otherwiſe they would not com forth, to the battaile.

But euen as hee was come to the gate, fiue whoſe lot was nert to fight came forth, and all at once ſet on him, but he like a ſecond Hercules, amidſt the eleauen Gyant-like brethren, firſt receaued al their blowes vpon his ſhield, to try the ſtrength of their armes, and hauing once felt the weight of all their forces, he directed his ſword againſt him, whoſe blowes hee thought might doe him the greateſt damage: and giuing him a full blow beneath the ſhield, parted him right in the waſt, then laying on amongſt them with equall dole, he made from ſome their heads, from others their armes and legges to fly into the field. And now foure of them being kild in the place, the other beganne to fly as faſt as he could towards the wicket, but before hee could attaine halfe of the way, the Knight of the Lions ouertoke him, & gaue him ſo full a blow vpon the head, that he cleft him downe to the girdle: to the amazement of the beholders, who ſtode vpon the battlements of the Caſtle, almoſt fearing to goe forth to fight with him, but being vrged, both by their oath, and alſo by the commaundement of their Captaine, the ner fiue went forth, but were in a manner no ſoner iſſued, but that they ſought meanes to returne

returne againe, ſuch incredible feare had they of his weighty blowes. But hee ſeeing their intent, and minding to preuent the ſame, got lightly betweene the gate and them: and now hauing already ſlaine three of them, and wounded the other two, hee beganne to fall into conſideration with himſelfe, that if he did not take the time, whiles it preſented it ſelfe vnto him to enter into the Caſtle, he might when he would, peraduenture be bard of the like opportunitie. And conſidering withall the goodneſſe of his Armor, & vnwillingneſſe of the defendants to come forth, determined to enter whilſt the wicket was open: wherefore ſtepping a little to the right hand, he gaue one of them ſo ſore a blow on the left ſhoulder, that cauſed him to fall to the ground, and herewithall hee lept ſuddenly to the wicket, and got in thereat: which they of the Caſtle perceauing, and with all fearing the ſequell, bee ganne to arme themſelues, and all at once to aſſault him, ſome with ſwords, other with Launces, ſome others againe betooke them to throwing of ſtones, & diuers engines of iron at him, where with he was greatly troubled. But ſeeing no remedy, but either to conquer or die, he couered himſelfe with his ſhield, and with his truſty blade in his hand, hee made ſuch way amongſt them, that he thought himſelfe ſureſt, that was fartheſt off from him: ſo that within ỹ ſpace of two houres, he had not left aboue fiue of them liuing: all which were likewiſe very ſore wounded, & beeing vtterly voyd of hope to eſcape his conquering arme, determined to ſubmit themſelues to his mercy, hoping thereby to ſaue their liues, which otherwiſe they could not long preſerue. Wherefore falling on their knees, with one voice they craued mercy, which he ſone graunted vnto them, being as I haue many times before ſaid, naturally inclined to pitty. And willing them to ſtand vp, hee demaunded what priſoners there were in the Caſtle, and for what occaſion that cuſtome was there erected: all which one of them at large recounted, declaring how that the King of Denmarke as yet remained there, with diuers other noble and gallant

Knights.

Knights. Which when the Knight of the Lions heard, hee commaunded straight waies to be conducted vnto the prison: and likewise that Adresto should be brought in, and his woundes dressed by the Surgian of the Castle, which was a man greatly experienced in that science, all which was presently performed. And one of the Knights running to one of them that was slaine, toke from him a bunch of keyes, wherewith he opened a little iron dore, and discending downe a narrow paire of staiers, they came to a dungion vndergrounde, at the entry whereof was another iron dore, which they likewise opened: then having a torch lighted in their hands, they vnchained all the prisoners, amongst whom they found King Frederick, & Lord Gualtero his Cosin: the Duke of Listenburge, the Lord of Menew, Sir Henault, and diuers others, to the number of a hundred, all or most part Knights of Denmarke. Many of which were sore pined away, and almost famished through their extreame griefe and courle fare: but the King, the Lord Gualtero, & Sir Henault, were little or nothing altred for all their long imprisonment. And now being all brought forth into the great Hall of the Castle, they with one accord gaue harty thankes vnto the Knight of the Lions, and then falling on their knees, with one consent they gaue praises to almighty God, which being ended: the King with the noble men came vnto the Knight of the Lions, desiring him to declare who hee was, that they were so much bound vnto for their deliuerance. To which hee answered, that hee was commonly called the Knight of the Lions: But as touching his parents or Country, he knew not, only this he had heard, that being a child, he was taken vp in a Forrest, in the Kingdome of Denmarke, by the Duke of Saxonie, who since that time had carefully brought him vp as his sonne. Which when the King had heard he imbrast him in his armes, desiring him to accompany him into his Kingdome, where hee would showe himselfe so thankfull vnto him, as hee should not thinke his labour ill bestowed. The Knight being by the instinct of nature,

greatly affected vnto the King, ſome conſented hereto, although it were farre out of his way towards Spaine, whether he was trauelling. For which the King gaue him hartie thankes, and withall beganne to haue an inward loue towards him: here continued they by the ſpace of eight or tenne daies, to refreſh their weake bodies, as alſo for the curing of the woundes of Adreſto, and making preparation for their Armors, whereof they had great ſtore in the Caſtle, & ſome horſes: others they got abroade in the Country nere adioyning for their monies. And now hearing that Grifforie was gathering his forces to come againſt them, they departed towards Flaunders, where hearing of the warres and rebellion in Denmarke, they determined vnknowne to haſten thether, and naming themſelues to be all Knights arrant, met together by chance: and hearing of theſe warres were, minded to entertaine themſelues in the armie of the States. With this determination arriued they at the Citty of Gaunt, which was ſtill held by the Danes: and here they remained, to prouide themſelues of ſuch things as they needed.

CHAP. XX.

How King *Fredericke*, the Knight of the Lyons, and the reſt of their company, arriued in the Army of the States, and how the next day they gaue battell vnto the *Scots*, where, by the vallour of the King, the Knight of the Lyons, and their company, the States got the victory, and howe the King made himſelfe knowne.

The King and the reſt of his company, hauing prouided themſelues of all things neceſſary for their iourney, departed from Gaunt towards Denmarke, being in all to the number of an hundred Knights, well furniſhed and prouided for the warre. And marching thus together through Flaunders, and other prouinces of Germany, they arriued within thirtie dayes at

Rengsberge

Rensberge, where the two Armies by the ſpace of ſixe daies had line incamped one againſt the other, continually ſkirmiſhing, but neither ſide daring the one to aſſault ỹ other. And now beeing here arriued, the King and the reſt beeing diſguiſed for feare of being knowne, came vnto the States, deſiring entertainement, and withall, declared a long fained circumſtance how they had met together: and beeing all minded to ayde theyr right and iuſt cauſe againſt the Scots and traytors, they were come together to proffer their ſeruices. The States beeing glad of this ſuccor, and withall knowing diuers of them, as the Duke of Litſenburge, and others, whom they receiued with great ioy, and gaue entertainment to all the reſt, who by the meanes of the Duke were placed in commaund: and entring into counſell, they determined to ſend preſently vnto the Scots to demaund battell, which by the Earle Dowglaſſe was ſone graunted: and the next day it was appointed that it ſhould be tryed by a pitched battell who ſhould haue the victory.

The morning beeing come, and both Armies ranged in the field, the States had deuided their forces into three battalions, the firſt whereof was ledde by the Lord Louden, and the County of Mildrope, containing eight thouſand, the ſecond or maine battell, was ledde by the Duke of Litſenburge, and the Lord of Opencade, containing twelue thouſand, the third & laſt battalion, contayning nine thouſand, was led by the Lord Itzenho, and the Lord of Renſberge. The King, the Knight of the Lyons, with their cõpany, & ſome others, to the number of two hundred, would not at all ioyne themſelues with any of the troopes, but in a looſe manner, would make a tryall to breake in on ỹ backs of their enemies as ſone as the battell ſhould begin: each one of thẽ for their better knowledge to theyr friends, wearing on their Helmes a croſſe of gréne and corronation coloured ſilke: in this ſort was ranged the whole battell of the States.

On the contrary ſide, the Earle Dowglaſſe placed his Army in another maner, making as it were but one maine

battaile of his whole Armie, in the midſt whereof he placed for his owne gard fiue thouſand Scots: the reſt he intermixed with the Danes, the greateſt part whereof hee placed in the forefront of the battaile: his wings conſiſted moſt of a light kind of people, which did vſe to caſt Darts, beeing armed onely with a ſhort ſword and target, with which when they came to ioyne blowes, they did great ſpoyle to their enemies.

And now both Armies beeing thus ranged in battaile aray, the Drummes & Trumpets ſounded, making a moſt ioyfull ſound, to them whoſe harts not daunted with feare deſired to incounter with their enemies: euery Captaine incouraging his men to fight valiantly, and to doe their beſt to winne the victory. The chiefe of the ſtates incouraging their ſouldiers with the iuſtice of their cauſe, as beeing vrged to fight for their fredome and liberty of their Country. By this time were both Armies come together, the Lord Louden giuing the firſt charge vpon his enemies, brake his Launce valiantly, and drawing out his ſword, beeing followed by his company, made way through his enemies ranks, but ſone he was ſtopped from going farre: and had it not bene, that the Duke of Liſlenbege, and the Lord of Opencade came with freſh ſuccours, they had bene all put to the ſword. For the Scots ſeing the violent raſhneſſe of the Lord Louden and the Count Mildrope, opened their ranks of purpoſe, and hauing ſuffered them to enter, incloſed them round about, but now at the coming of the Duke, the battell began to grow very hote, inſomuch that there were many ſlaine of both ſides.

The Scots euer keping themſelues cloſe together, made themſelues the ſtronger, whereas the States for want of ſkill and knowledge, ſuffered their troopes to breake their ranks, to their great dammage. Which the Earle Dowglaſſe perceiuing, with ſome twelue or fouretéene thouſand entred in amongſt thē, making great ſlaughter where they went. The Earle this day ſhewing that his yeres had not any way taken away the valor which in his former dayes

he

he had ſhowed, for it was thought ỳ this day hee ſlew with his owne hands aboue three ſcore Knights.

Now beganne the Danes to fly, trvſting rather to their heeles then the defence of their ſwords, which the Lord Itzenho, and the Lord Rensberge perceauing, came in with the rereward, and againe renewed the fight, which before was almoſt ended, gathering together the diſperced troops of the Duke. But alas to ſmall purpoſe had this their new onſet béene, had it not béene that the King with his company of Venturers, hauing fetched about a great hill, which lay on the ſide of the battaile, came at the ſame inſtant on the backe of their enemies, and withall their might charging them, entred pell mell amongſt them, killing a great many, before ſuch time as they could turne their faces, to knowe from whence this miſchiefe came. The King accompanied with the Knight of the Lions, Adreſto, and the Lord Gualtero, made a plaine way for the reſt to follow them, eſpecially the Knight of the Lions, who neuer ſtrake ſtroke but was either the death or diſmembring of ſome Knight. The Lord of Menew, and Sir Henault, did likewiſe the part of noble Knights: ſo as in ſhort ſpace the odds beganne to appeare on the ſide of the States, who before were euen vanquiſhed. Which when the Earle Dowglaſſe ſawe and grieuing to behold, he with his elected company came to make head, where he ſawe moſt danger, and perceauing that the Knight of their Lions, was in a manner the whole ouerthrow of his Armie, hée ſet ſpurres to his horſe, and comming vnto him, gaue him a great blowe on his Helme, cauſing him to bend his head forwards. But he ſoone requited the ſame, for lifting vp his ſword, he gaue the Earle ſuch a blowe, that had he not warded the ſame with his ſhield, hee had ended therewith his life, for notwithſtanding his defence, it cauſed him to fall from his horſe in a traunce, and ſo was taken priſoner: to the great diſcouragement of the whole Armie, who preſently put themſelues to flight, but were ſo hotly perſued, that they were but few that eſcaped, but were either ſlaine

or taken priſoners. Of men of name, there was ſlaine of the States the Duke of Litſenburge, the Lord Louden, and the Count of Mildrope. And of the Scots & traytors, there was ſlaine Sir Iames Lewrence the Earles Coſin, the Lord Crecon a Scot, and the Count Hermes, with ſome twenty thouſand of the Commons. There was taken priſoners the Earle Dowglaſſe, the Vicount Warwicke, the Archbiſhop of Maiance, and the Lord Harding, which two latter, were the next day executed for their rebellion.

Thus the victory béeing obtained by the States, they gaue thanks to GOD with publique & ſolemne prayers, then cauſing the wounded to be cured, they called a counſell to determine on their affaires, where all the chiefe of the Armie béeing aſſembled, euery man commended the great vallour of the Venturers, but eſpecially that of the Knight of the Lyons, the gréene Knight which was Adreſto, and the two tawny Knights, whereof the one was the King, the other the Lord Gwaltero.

The King now ſéeing it was not good longer to conceale himſelfe, ſtode forth in the midſt of the Aſſembly, and taking of his Helme, diſcouering his face, ſpake with a reſonable loude voyce.

My friends & welbeloued Countrimen, I perceaue the long abſence of your King, hath worne out in many their naturall loue & obedience which they ought to haue to their native Country: and alſo in moſt of you the knowledge of me, who by the prouidence of God, and vallour of this noble Knight, (poynting to the Knight of the Lyons) am deliuered from a long and grieuous impriſonment, which my Coſin Gwaltero, and many others héere preſent can well witneſſe, and now am come vnto the ayde of you my true and louing Subiects. Wherefore it is my will, that the chiefe of thoſe conſpirators who haue raiſed this rebellion, be to morrow next (to the example of all others) hanged, drawne and quartered.

The whole Aſſembly hearing & ſéeing their King, who for the ſpace of twenty yéeres they all imagined to be dead, with

with one voyce cryed aloude, Long liue King *Fredericke* to raine and rule ouer vs, and withall, ranne each ſtriuing to come firſt to kiſſe his hands, and welcome him into his kingdome: greatly deſiring to heare the cauſe of his long abſence, which was deferred till ſome other more conuenient time. This newes was preſently ſpred through the whole Army, to the great ioy of all men, which they euidently ſhewed by their ſhoutes and bonfires which they made that night. The next day, the King hauing ſéne the execution of the chiefe Traytors, and pardoning the reſt, diſmiſſing all his Army, ſauing ſome few, which he ſent to the Townes that were in rebellion, which preſently yéelded vnto his mercie, he departed towards Maiance, hauing ſtill in his company the Knight of the Lyons and Adreſto, whom he intirely loued, and to whom he made many large proffers, if they pleaſed to haue ſtayed in his kingdome. And being come to Maiance, he was receiued with the greateſt ioy that might be by the Cittizens, where he remained by the ſpace of a month, in the greateſt ioy that hart could wiſh: ſaue onely the remembrance of his Quéene did ſomething hinder the fulnes thereof, which was awhile ſwétned with the delightfull company of his vnknowne ſonne,

where I will leaue them, and ſo conclude the
ſecond part of this hiſtory.

(·.·)

FINIS.